

# Catalog of Control Systems Security: Recommendations for Standards Developers

*April 2011*



**Homeland  
Security**

## Control Systems Security Program National Cyber Security Division



#### **DISCLAIMER**

This report was prepared as an account of work sponsored by an agency of the U.S. Government. Neither the U.S. Government nor any agency thereof, nor any employee, makes any warranty, expressed or implied, or assumes any legal liability or responsibility for any third party's use, or the results of such use, or any information, apparatus, product, or process disclosed in this publication, or represents that its use by such third party would not infringe privately owned rights.

## **ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

This document was developed by the U.S. Department of Homeland Security to help facilitate the development of control systems cybersecurity industry standards. The original author team consisted of representatives from the Department of Homeland Security Control Systems Security Program (CSSP), National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), Argonne National Laboratory (ANL), Idaho National Laboratory (INL), Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL), Pacific Northwest National Laboratory (PNNL), and Sandia National Laboratories (SNL).

For additional information or comments, please send inquiries to the Control Systems Security Program at [cssp@hq.dhs.gov](mailto:cssp@hq.dhs.gov) with the word “Catalog” in the subject line.



## **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

This catalog presents a compilation of practices that various industry bodies have recommended to increase the security of control systems from both physical and cyber attacks. The recommendations in this catalog are grouped into 19 families, or categories, that have similar emphasis. The recommendations within each family are displayed with a summary statement of the recommendation, supplemental guidance or clarification, and a requirement enhancements statement providing augmentation for the recommendation under special situations.

This catalog is not limited for use by a specific industry sector. All sectors can use it to develop a framework needed to produce a sound cybersecurity program. The number of new and updated published Cyber Security Standards and guidelines has increased significantly this past year. An attempt has been made to reference and include the best practices introduced by these new and updated documents to interested users for consideration as input into individual industrial cybersecurity plans under development and review. This catalog should be viewed as a collection of guidelines and recommendations to be considered and judiciously employed, as appropriate, when reviewing and developing cybersecurity standards for control systems. The recommendations in this catalog are intended to be broad enough to provide any industry using control systems the flexibility needed to develop sound cybersecurity standards specific to their individual security needs. These recommendations are subservient to existing legal rules and regulations pertaining to specific industry sectors, and the user is urged to consult and follow those applicable regulations.



# CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENT .....	iii
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	v
ACRONYMS .....	xiii
1. INTRODUCTION .....	1
2. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STANDARDS DEVELOPERS .....	3
2.1 Security Policy .....	4
2.1.1 Security Policy and Procedures .....	5
2.2 Organizational Security .....	5
2.2.1 Management Policy and Procedures .....	5
2.2.2 Management Accountability .....	6
2.2.3 Baseline Practices .....	6
2.2.4 Coordination of Threat Mitigation .....	7
2.2.5 Security Policies for Third Parties .....	7
2.2.6 Termination of Third-Party Access .....	8
2.3 Personnel Security .....	8
2.3.1 Personnel Security Policy and Procedures .....	9
2.3.2 Position Categorization .....	9
2.3.3 Personnel Screening .....	10
2.3.4 Personnel Termination .....	10
2.3.5 Personnel Transfer .....	11
2.3.6 Access Agreements .....	11
2.3.7 Third-Party Personnel Security .....	12
2.3.8 Personnel Accountability .....	12
2.3.9 Personnel Roles .....	13
2.4 Physical and Environmental Security .....	13
2.4.1 Physical and Environmental Security Policy and Procedures .....	13
2.4.2 Physical Access Authorizations .....	14
2.4.3 Physical Access Control .....	15
2.4.4 Monitoring Physical Access .....	16
2.4.5 Visitor Control .....	16
2.4.6 Visitor Records .....	17
2.4.7 Physical Access Log Retention .....	17
2.4.8 Emergency Shutoff .....	18
2.4.9 Emergency Power .....	18
2.4.10 Emergency Lighting .....	19
2.4.11 Fire Protection .....	19
2.4.12 Temperature and Humidity Controls .....	19
2.4.13 Water Damage Protection .....	20
2.4.14 Delivery and Removal .....	20
2.4.15 Alternate Work Site .....	21
2.4.16 Portable Media .....	21
2.4.17 Personnel and Asset Tracking .....	22
2.4.18 Location of Control System Assets .....	22
2.4.19 Information Leakage .....	23

2.4.20	Power Equipment and Power Cabling .....	23
2.4.21	Physical Device Access Control.....	24
2.5	System and Services Acquisition.....	24
2.5.1	System and Services Acquisition Policy and Procedures .....	24
2.5.2	Allocation of Resources.....	25
2.5.3	Life-Cycle Support .....	25
2.5.4	Acquisitions.....	26
2.5.5	Control System Documentation.....	26
2.5.6	Software License Usage Restrictions .....	27
2.5.7	User-Installed Software .....	28
2.5.8	Security Engineering Principles .....	28
2.5.9	Outsourced Control System Services .....	29
2.5.10	Developer Configuration Management .....	29
2.5.11	Developer Security Testing .....	30
2.5.12	Supply Chain Protection.....	31
2.5.13	Trustworthiness .....	32
2.5.14	Critical Information System Components .....	32
2.6	Configuration Management .....	33
2.6.1	Configuration Management Policy and Procedures .....	33
2.6.2	Baseline Configuration.....	34
2.6.3	Configuration Change Control .....	35
2.6.4	Monitoring Configuration Changes.....	36
2.6.5	Access Restrictions for Configuration Change.....	36
2.6.6	Configuration Settings.....	37
2.6.7	Configuration for Least Functionality .....	38
2.6.8	Configuration Assets .....	39
2.6.9	Addition, Removal, and Disposal of Equipment .....	40
2.6.10	Factory Default Authentication Management .....	40
2.6.11	Configuration Management Plan.....	41
2.7	Strategic Planning .....	42
2.7.1	Strategic Planning Policy and Procedures .....	42
2.7.2	Control System Security Plan.....	43
2.7.3	Interruption Identification and Classification.....	43
2.7.4	Roles and Responsibilities.....	44
2.7.5	Planning Process Training .....	45
2.7.6	Testing .....	45
2.7.7	Investigation and Analysis.....	46
2.7.8	Corrective Action .....	46
2.7.9	Risk Mitigation .....	46
2.7.10	System Security Plan Update .....	47
2.7.11	Rules of Behavior .....	47
2.7.12	Security-Related Activity Planning .....	48
2.8	System and Communication Protection.....	48
2.8.1	System and Communication Protection Policy and Procedures .....	48
2.8.2	Management Port Partitioning.....	49
2.8.3	Security Function Isolation.....	50
2.8.4	Information in Shared Resources .....	50
2.8.5	Denial-of-Service Protection .....	51
2.8.6	Resource Priority .....	51
2.8.7	Boundary Protection.....	52

2.8.8	Communication Integrity .....	53
2.8.9	Communication Confidentiality .....	54
2.8.10	Trusted Path.....	54
2.8.11	Cryptographic Key Establishment and Management .....	55
2.8.12	Use of Validated Cryptography .....	55
2.8.13	Collaborative Computing Devices.....	56
2.8.14	Transmission of Security Attributes .....	56
2.8.15	Public Key Infrastructure Certificates .....	57
2.8.16	Mobile Code .....	57
2.8.17	Voice-Over Internet Protocol .....	58
2.8.18	System Connections .....	58
2.8.19	Security Roles.....	59
2.8.20	Session Authenticity .....	59
2.8.21	Architecture and Provisioning for Name/Address Resolution Service .....	60
2.8.22	Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Authoritative Source) .....	60
2.8.23	Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Recursive or Caching Resolver).....	61
2.8.24	Fail in Known State .....	61
2.8.25	Thin Nodes .....	62
2.8.26	Honeypots.....	62
2.8.27	Operating System-Independent Applications .....	62
2.8.28	Confidentiality of Information at Rest.....	63
2.8.29	Heterogeneity .....	63
2.8.30	Virtualization Techniques.....	63
2.8.31	Covert Channel Analysis .....	64
2.8.32	Information System Partitioning .....	64
2.8.33	Transmission Preparation Integrity .....	65
2.8.34	Non-Modifiable Executable Programs .....	65
2.9	Information and Document Management .....	66
2.9.1	Information and Document Management Policy and Procedures .....	66
2.9.2	NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.1, App. C.11 Information and Document Retention.....	66
2.9.3	Information Handling .....	67
2.9.4	Information Classification .....	67
2.9.5	Information Exchange .....	68
2.9.6	Information and Document Classification.....	68
2.9.7	Information and Document Retrieval .....	69
2.9.8	Information and Document Destruction .....	70
2.9.9	Information and Document Management Review.....	70
2.9.10	Media Marking .....	70
2.9.11	Security Attributes .....	71
2.10	System Development and Maintenance.....	72
2.10.1	System Maintenance Policy and Procedures .....	72
2.10.2	Legacy System Upgrades .....	73
2.10.3	System Monitoring and Evaluation .....	73
2.10.4	Backup and Recovery .....	74
2.10.5	Unplanned System Maintenance .....	74
2.10.6	Periodic System Maintenance .....	75
2.10.7	Maintenance Tools .....	76
2.10.8	Maintenance Personnel.....	76

2.10.9	Non-Local (Remote) Maintenance .....	77
2.10.10	Timely Maintenance .....	78
2.11	Security Awareness and Training .....	78
2.11.1	Security Awareness and Training Policy and Procedures .....	79
2.11.2	Security Awareness .....	79
2.11.3	Security Training .....	80
2.11.4	Security Training Records .....	81
2.11.5	Contact with Security Groups and Associations .....	81
2.11.6	Security Responsibility Testing.....	81
2.12	Incident Response .....	82
2.12.1	Incident Response Policy and Procedures .....	82
2.12.2	Continuity of Operations Plan .....	83
2.12.3	Continuity of Operations Roles and Responsibilities.....	83
2.12.4	Incident Response Training .....	84
2.12.5	Continuity of Operations Plan Testing .....	84
2.12.6	Continuity of Operations Plan Update.....	85
2.12.7	Incident Handling .....	85
2.12.8	Incident Monitoring.....	86
2.12.9	Incident Reporting .....	86
2.12.10	Incident Response Assistance.....	87
2.12.11	Incident Response Plan.....	88
2.12.12	Corrective Action .....	89
2.12.13	Alternate Storage Sites .....	89
2.12.14	Alternate Command/Control Methods .....	90
2.12.15	Alternate Control Center .....	91
2.12.16	Control System Backup .....	91
2.12.17	Control System Recovery and Reconstitution .....	92
2.12.18	Fail-Safe Response .....	93
2.13	Media Protection.....	93
2.13.1	Media Protection Policy and Procedures.....	93
2.13.2	Media Access.....	94
2.13.3	Media Classification .....	95
2.13.4	Media Marking .....	95
2.13.5	Media Storage.....	96
2.13.6	Media Transport .....	97
2.13.7	Media Sanitization and Disposal .....	98
2.14	System and Information Integrity .....	98
2.14.1	System and Information Integrity Policy and Procedures .....	99
2.14.2	Flaw Remediation.....	99
2.14.3	Malicious Code Protection .....	100
2.14.4	System Monitoring Tools and Techniques .....	101
2.14.5	Security Alerts and Advisories and Directives .....	103
2.14.6	Security Functionality Verification .....	104
2.14.7	Software and Information Integrity .....	104
2.14.8	Spam Protection.....	105
2.14.9	Information Input Restrictions.....	106
2.14.10	Information Input Validation.....	106
2.14.11	Error Handling.....	107
2.14.12	Information Output Handling and Retention .....	107
2.14.13	Predictable Failure Prevention.....	108

2.15	Access Control.....	108
2.15.1	Access Control Policy and Procedures .....	109
2.15.2	Identification and Authentication Policy and Procedures .....	109
2.15.3	Account Management.....	110
2.15.4	Identifier Management .....	111
2.15.5	Authenticator Management .....	111
2.15.6	Account Review .....	112
2.15.7	Access Enforcement .....	113
2.15.8	Separation of Duties .....	114
2.15.9	Least Privilege .....	115
2.15.10	User Identification and Authentication.....	115
2.15.11	Permitted Actions without Identification or Authentication.....	116
2.15.12	Device Identification and Authentication.....	117
2.15.13	Authenticator Feedback.....	117
2.15.14	Cryptographic Module Authentication .....	118
2.15.15	Information Flow Enforcement .....	118
2.15.16	Passwords .....	120
2.15.17	System Use Notification.....	121
2.15.18	Concurrent Session Control.....	121
2.15.19	Previous Logon (Access) Notification .....	122
2.15.20	Unsuccessful Login Attempts.....	122
2.15.21	Session Lock.....	123
2.15.22	Remote Session Termination.....	123
2.15.23	Remote Access Policy and Procedures.....	124
2.15.24	Remote Access .....	124
2.15.25	Access Control for Mobile Devices.....	126
2.15.26	Wireless Access Restrictions.....	127
2.15.27	Personally Owned Information.....	127
2.15.28	External Access Protections .....	128
2.15.29	Use of External Information Control Systems.....	129
2.15.30	User-Based Collaboration and Information Sharing .....	130
2.15.31	Publicly Accessible Content.....	130
2.16	Audit and Accountability.....	131
2.16.1	Audit and Accountability Policy and Procedures .....	131
2.16.2	Auditable Events .....	131
2.16.3	Content of Audit Records .....	132
2.16.4	Audit Storage Capacity.....	133
2.16.5	Response to Audit Processing Failures .....	133
2.16.6	Audit Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting .....	134
2.16.7	Audit Reduction and Report Generation .....	134
2.16.8	Time Stamps.....	135
2.16.9	Protection of Audit Information .....	135
2.16.10	Audit Record Retention .....	136
2.16.11	Conduct and Frequency of Audits .....	136
2.16.12	Auditor Qualification.....	137
2.16.13	Audit Tools.....	137
2.16.14	Security Policy Compliance .....	138
2.16.15	Audit Generation .....	139
2.16.16	Monitoring for Information Disclosure .....	139
2.16.17	Session Audit.....	140

2.17	Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Policy .....	140
2.17.1	Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Management Policy and Procedures .....	140
2.17.2	Continuous Improvement .....	141
2.17.3	Monitoring of Security Policy .....	141
2.17.4	Best Practices.....	142
2.17.5	Security Accreditation .....	142
2.17.6	Security Certification.....	143
2.18	Risk Management and Assessment.....	144
2.18.1	Risk Assessment Policy and Procedures .....	144
2.18.2	Risk Management Plan.....	145
2.18.3	Certification, Accreditation, and Security Assessment Policies and Procedures .....	145
2.18.4	Security Assessments .....	146
2.18.5	Control System Connections .....	147
2.18.6	Plan of Action and Milestones.....	147
2.18.7	Continuous Monitoring.....	148
2.18.8	Security Categorization .....	148
2.18.9	Risk Assessment.....	149
2.18.10	Risk Assessment Update .....	150
2.18.11	Vulnerability Assessment and Awareness.....	150
2.18.12	Identify, Classify, Prioritize, and Analyze Potential Security Risks .....	152
2.19	Security Program Management.....	152
2.19.1	Information Security Program Plan .....	152
2.19.2	Senior Information Security Officer .....	153
2.19.3	Information Security Resources .....	154
2.19.4	Plan of Action and Milestones Process .....	154
2.19.5	Information System Inventory .....	155
2.19.6	Information Security Measures of Performance.....	155
2.19.7	Enterprise Architecture.....	156
2.19.8	Critical Infrastructure Plan .....	156
2.19.9	Risk Management Strategy.....	156
2.19.10	Security Authorization Process .....	157
2.19.11	Mission/Business Process Definition .....	157
3.	CONCLUSIONS .....	159
4.	GLOSSARY: DEFINITIONS OF TERMS .....	160
5.	DOCUMENTS REFERENCED .....	174

## TABLES

Table 1. Catalog of Recommendations and NIST SP 800-53 comparison. .... 3

## **ACRONYMS**

AC	access control
AGA	American Gas Association
AT	awareness and training
AU	audit and accountability
CA	security assessment and authorization
CAG	consensus audit guidelines
CC	critical control
CD	compact disc
CIKR	critical infrastructures and key resources
CIP	critical infrastructure protection
CM	Configuration Management
CP	Contingency Planning
DHS	Department of Homeland Security
DNS	Domain Name System
DOE	Department of Energy
DVD	digital video disc
EAP	Extensible Authentication Protocol
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standard
FISMA	Federal Information Security Management Act
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
IA	identification and authenticity
ICS	industrial control system
ICS-CERT	Industrial Control Systems Cyber Emergency Response Team
ID	Identification
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IP	Internet Protocol
IPSec	IP Security
IPS	intrusion prevention system
IR	incident response
ISA	International Society of Automation
ISO	International Organization for Standardization

IT	information technology
Key	cryptographic key
MA	System Development and Maintenance
MP	media protection
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NRC	Nuclear Regulatory Commission
OSI	Open System Interconnection
PDF	portable document file
PE	physical and environmental protection
PIV	Personal Identity Verification
PKI	Public Key Infrastructure
PL	planning
PM	program management
PS	personnel security
RA	risk assessment
RFID	radio frequency identification
RG	regulatory guide
SA	system and services acquisition
SC	System and communications protection
SCADA	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SD	secure digital memory card
SI	system and information integrity
SP	Special Publication
TCB	Trusted Computing Base
UHF	ultra high frequency
USB	universal serial bus
US-CERT	United States Computer Emergency Readiness Team
VHF	very high frequency
VoIP	Voice-Over Internet Protocol
VPN	Virtual Private Network

# Catalog of Control Systems Security: Recommendations for Standards Developers

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Protecting critical infrastructures and key resources (CIKR) is essential to the security, public health and safety, economic vitality, and way of life for our nation's citizens. Fundamental to the protection of CIKR is ensuring the security of the systems that control these infrastructures. Developing and applying robust security standards enables control systems to be secure.

Development of security standards specific to CIKR control systems is maturing. However, many standards lack the detailed guidance needed to ensure adequate protection from the emerging threats of cyber attacks on control systems. This catalog of recommended security controls is specifically designed to provide various industry sectors the framework needed to develop sound security standards, guidelines, and best practices. These recommendations are not intended to replace the need for applying sound engineering judgment, best practices, and risk assessments. Decisions regarding when, where, and how these standards should be used are best determined by the specific industry sectors. This document provides those decision-makers with a common catalog (framework) from which to select security controls for control systems.

The term “control systems,” as used throughout this document, includes supervisory control and data acquisition systems, process control systems, distributed control systems, and other control systems specific to any of the critical infrastructure industry sectors. Although differences in these systems exist, their similarities enable a common framework for discussing and defining security controls. Currently, control system security standards and guidelines are being created by a variety of Standards Development Organizations to meet the needs of different industry sectors and regulatory environments. However, the standards produced for a specific sector may not always be consistent, compatible, or comparable with similar standards developed in another sector. These developing standards often have differing priorities, emphases, and levels of detail concerning specific security controls based on specific industrial acceptable risks and regulations.

This document attempts to encompass these differences and provide a way to clarify security programs for similar control systems. Use of this document is not limited to a specific industry sector. This catalog should be viewed as a collection of recommendations to be considered and judiciously employed, as appropriate, when reviewing and developing cybersecurity standards for control systems. While many of the documents referenced in the preparation of this catalog are still in draft or do not apply directly to control systems, they still supply information useful for the security of control systems.

Throughout the development of this document, the following aspects of control systems were considered:

- **Proprietary Control System Technology**—A large percentage of deployed control system hardware and software is proprietary. However, some vendors are moving toward marketing products that use nonproprietary, commercial off-the-shelf technologies, as these newer systems provide more functions, with better efficiency, costs (acquisition, operation, and maintenance), and effectiveness. Control system networks also may use proprietary or industry-specific protocols. The proprietary nature of installed control systems currently requires professionals with system-specific knowledge to operate them, but that is slowly changing as older systems get replaced and upgraded.
- **Control System Equipment Life Cycle**—The life cycle for control system hardware is from 5 to 15 years (or more) as compared to the 2 to 3-year (or shorter) life cycle for information technology (IT) business systems. Building security into control system equipment is a recent development.

Typically, legacy control systems do not contain the standard security functionality included in many IT systems such as cryptography or auditing.

- **Real Time Operation**—The systems that control CIKR are designed and constructed to be in operation continuously. Any interruption in service may have catastrophic results to human life and property. This is a key difference between control systems and IT business systems. Real time operation presents a unique challenge for securing these systems because security cannot compromise the reliable operation of the control system.

The goal of a control systems security program is to balance security while operating within resource limits. When developing a security policy to address control systems, these characteristics must be considered. Security is not meant to impede operation and should be as transparent as possible. The most successful security program is one that integrates seamlessly and becomes a common aspect of daily operation. The intent of this document is to help facilitate such a program.

## 2. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STANDARDS DEVELOPERS

This section contains a detailed listing of recommended controls from several sources. The organization of each recommendation is based on National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 800-53, *Recommended Security Controls for Federal Information Systems*, but modified to convey control system language. The recommended controls are organized into families primarily based on NIST SP 800-53 and include contributions from “Key Elements to a Cyber Security Management System,” (Clause 5) found in the Draft Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (ISA)-d9900.02 document. The families have been realigned from the format of NIST SP 800-53, Revision 3 to facilitate the security management of the control system environments. However, all the families addressed in NIST SP 800-53, Revision 3 are also addressed in this document. A cross-reference of the subsections below in Section 2 and the NIST SP 800-53, Revision 3 families is provided in Table 1. Table 1 demonstrates that this document expands on the NIST SP 800-53, Revision 3 families by adding subsections addressing *Security Policy*, *Organizational Security*, *Information and Document Management*, and *Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Policy* to provide a comprehensive catalog of control systems security recommendations.

Table 1. Catalog of Recommendations and NIST SP 800-53 comparison.

Catalog of Recommendations Subsections	NIST SP 800-53 Revision 3 Families
2.1 Security Policy	Each of the 18 control family initial elements relates to its own policy and procedures (e.g., AC- 1 through PM-1)
2.2 Organizational Security	Access Control—AC Program Management—PM
2.3 Personnel Security	Access Control—AC Personnel Security—PS
2.4 Physical and Environmental Security	Access Control—AC Physical and Environmental Security—PE
2.5 System and Services Acquisition	System and Services Acquisition—SA
2.6 Configuration Management	Configuration Management—CM
2.7 Strategic Planning	Planning—PL
2.8 System and Communication Protection	Access Control—AC System and Communication Protection—SC
2.9 Information and Document Management	Contingency Planning—CP Media Protection—MP
2.10 System Development and Maintenance	Maintenance—MA
2.11 Security Awareness and Training	Awareness and Training—AT
2.12 Incident Response	Incident Response—IR
2.13 Media Protection	Media Protection—MP
2.14 System and Information Integrity	System and Information Integrity—SI
2.15 Access Control	Access Control—AC Identification Authentication—IA
2.16 Audit and Accountability	Audit and Accountability—AU

Table 1. (continued).

Catalog of Recommendations Subsections	NIST SP 800-53 Revision 3 Families
2.17 Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Policy	Security Assessment and Authorization—CA
2.18 Risk Management and Assessment	Assessment and Authorization—CA
	Risk Assessment—RA
2.19 Security Program Management	Program Management—PM

This DHS catalog contains 250 recommended controls compared to 347 controls defined in NIST SP 800-53 Revision 3. Of these controls, seven catalog of recommendation controls are not specifically addressed in NIST SP 800-53 Revision 3. NIST SP 800-53 Revision 3 does not ignore these seven controls; rather, they are implied within several other control families. This change is reflective of the increased granularity for each control element within the NIST document. The new consensus audit guidelines (CAG) and regulatory guide (RG) 5.71 guidelines also follow this trend. As an example, catalog of recommendation control element 2.9.8, “Document Destruction,” addresses document retention and destruction. However, areas, such as visitor control, incident management, and configuration management, require different document retention and destruction requirements and policies. Other areas, such as roles and responsibilities and access control, are also broken down and inserted as needed into control elements to assist the user to understand and effectively deploy the security control being discussed.

The “Requirement” section for each security control includes detailed recommended security practices and mechanisms. The “Supplemental Guidance” section provides additional information that may be beneficial for understanding and implementing the recommendation. The last section, “Requirement Enhancements,” includes supplementary security constraints for the recommendation that will result in a more secure environment based on the organization’s predetermined level of protection required for the control system used for the critical process. Not all the recommendations are appropriate for all applications, so it will be necessary to determine the level of protection needed and only apply the guidance as appropriate. Industrial controls have an availability requirement that may require compensating controls instead of following the recommendations (see Appendix I of NIST SP 800-53 Revision 3, “Industrial Control Systems”). A few examples of these areas may be password, multiple session, and patch management controls where interference with operations becomes unacceptable because of operational requirements, testing, and certification requirements (e.g., substation automation, certain refinery operations, flight controls). The following recommendations were obtained from a review of the controls found in various industry standards. Similar controls were identified, and a single recommendation was prepared that addressed the intent of the original controls. Appendix A presents a cross reference of standards and guidelines used to develop these recommendations.

## 2.1 Security Policy

Security policies are the specific controls and behavior expectations that each member of the organization’s staff is required to meet in the daily operation of the control system. The development of the organization’s security policy is the first and most important step in developing an organizational security program. Security policies lay the groundwork for securing the organization’s physical, enterprise, and control system assets. Security procedures define how an organization implements the security policy. Using a predefined security policy best practices guide can help the organization to develop a cogent security policy.

## **2.1.1 Security Policy and Procedures**

### **2.1.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, implements, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, control system security policy that addresses:
  - a. The purpose of the security program as it relates to protecting the organization's personnel and assets
  - b. The scope of the security program as it applies to all organizational staff and third-party contractors
  - c. The roles, responsibilities, management commitment, and coordination among organizational entities of the security program to ensure compliance with the organization's security policy and other regulatory commitments.
2. Formal, documented procedures to implement the security policy and associated requirements. A control system security policy considers controls from each family contained in this document.

### **2.1.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The security policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The control system security policy can be included as part of the general security policy for the organization. Procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for the control system in particular, when required.

### **2.1.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.1.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-1, SC-14, PM-1

CAG CC-9

API 1164r2 4, 5.5, 7.1.3, Annex A, Annex B.4.1.2

NERC CIPS CIP 003-3, B.R1

NRC RG 5.71 App. A.2, App. B.1.1

## **2.2 Organizational Security**

Organizational security involves setting organization-wide policies and procedures that define acceptable behavior and practices concerning security. Organizational security includes management accountability, physical controls, and cyber-related functions. Organizational policies and procedures specify direction, commitment, responsibility, and oversight and define the security posture for the control system. These policies and procedures also apply to third-party contractors, integrators, and vendors used by the organization.

## **2.2.1 Management Policy and Procedures**

### **2.2.1.1 Requirement**

The organization establishes policies and procedures to define roles, responsibilities, behaviors, and practices for the implementation of an overall security program.

### **2.2.1.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The scope and responsibilities of the security program include management accountability, physical security, and information security for the enterprise and control systems. This program applies to third-party contractors, outsourcing partners, and the supply chain components of the organization.

### **2.2.1.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.2.1.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-1

API 1164r2              1.2, Annex A, Annex B.4.1.2

NERC CIPS              CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

NRC RG 5.71              App. B.3.11

## **2.2.2    Management Accountability**

### **2.2.2.1    *Requirement***

The organization defines a framework of management leadership accountability. This framework establishes roles and responsibilities to approve cybersecurity policy, assign security roles, and coordinate the implementation of cybersecurity across the organization.

### **2.2.2.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

This framework is not limited to traditional IT systems but also extends to control systems and the organization's supply chain.

### **2.2.2.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.2.2.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-1

API 1164r2              1.2

NERC CIPS              CIP 003-3, B.R2, B.R5

## **2.2.3    Baseline Practices**

### **2.2.3.1    *Requirement***

Baseline practices that organizations employ for organizational security include, but are not limited to:

1. Executive management accountability for the security program.
2. Responsibility for control system security within the organization includes sufficient authority and an appropriate level of funding to implement the organization's security policy.
3. The organization's security policies and procedures that provide clear direction, accountability, and oversight for the organization's security team. The security team assigns roles and responsibilities in accordance with the organization's policies and confirms that processes are in place to protect company assets and critical information.
4. The organization's contracts with external entities that address the organization's security policies and procedures with business partners, third-party contractors, and outsourcing partners.

5. The organization's security policies and procedures that ensure coordination or integration with the organization's physical security plan. Organization roles and responsibilities are established that address the overlap and synergy between physical and control system security risks.

#### **2.2.3.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

None

#### **2.2.3.3     *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.2.3.4     *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-1

API 1164r2        3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8

NRC RG 5.71      App. C.11.3

### **2.2.4     *Coordination of Threat Mitigation***

#### **2.2.4.1     *Requirement***

The organization's security policies and procedures delineate how the organization implements its emergency response plan and coordinates efforts with law enforcement agencies, regulators, Internet service providers, and other relevant organizations in the event of a security incident.

#### **2.2.4.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization expands relationships with local emergency response personnel to include information sharing and coordination of contingency plans as well as coordinated response to cybersecurity incidents. Entities, such as US-CERT and ICS-CERT, are available for threat assistance.

#### **2.2.4.3     *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.2.4.4     *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-9

API 1164r2        Section 3, Annex B and B.3

NERC CIPS        CIP 003-3, B.R1

### **2.2.5     *Security Policies for Third Parties***

#### **2.2.5.1     *Requirement***

The organization holds external suppliers and contractors that have an impact on the security of the control center to the same security policies and procedures as the organization's own personnel. The organization ensures security policies and procedures of second and third-tier suppliers comply with corporate cybersecurity policies and procedures if they will impact control system security.

#### **2.2.5.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization considers the increased security risk associated with outsourcing as part of the decision-making process to determine what to outsource and what outsourcing partner to select. Contracts with external suppliers govern physical as well as logical access. The organization clearly defines confidentiality or nondisclosure agreements and intellectual property rights. The organization also clearly defines change management procedures.

### **2.2.5.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.2.5.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PS-7

API 1164r2        3.4, 7.3.4, Annex A

NERC CIPS        CIP 004-3, B.R4, B.R4.1

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.1.21

## **2.2.6    Termination of Third-Party Access**

### **2.2.6.1    *Requirement***

The organization establishes procedures to remove external supplier physical and electronic access at the conclusion/termination of the contract in a timely manner.

### **2.2.6.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization clearly defines the timeliness for removal of external supplier access in the contract.

### **2.2.6.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

The organization periodically reviews existing authorized physical and electronic access permissions to ensure they are current. This check provides validation that terminated entities have been removed from physical and electronic access.

### **2.2.6.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-2, PS-4

CAG                CC-9, CC-11

API 1164r2        7.3.4, Annex A

NERC CIPS        CIP 004-3, B.R4, B.4.2

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.1.21, App. C.2.2

## **2.3    Personnel Security**

Personnel security addresses security program roles and responsibilities implemented during all phases of staff employment, including staff recruitment and termination. The organization screens applicants for critical positions in the operation and maintenance of the control system. The organization trains personnel when they are hired and provides subsequent refresher training on their job tasks, responsibilities, and behavioral expectations concerning the security of the control system. The organization may consider implementing a confidentiality or nondisclosure agreement that employees and third-party users of control system facilities must sign before being granted access to the control system. The organization also documents and implements a process to secure resources and revoke access privileges when personnel terminate.

## **2.3.1 Personnel Security Policy and Procedures**

### **2.3.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, personnel security policy that addresses:
  - a. The purpose of the security program as it relates to protecting the organization's personnel and assets
  - b. The scope of the security program as it applies to all the organizational staff and third-party contractors
  - c. The roles, responsibilities, management commitment, and coordination among organizational entities of the security program to ensure compliance with the organization's security policy and other regulatory commitments
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the personnel security policy and associated personnel security controls
3. Formal procedures to review and document the list of approved personnel with access to control systems.

### **2.3.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the personnel security policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The personnel security policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. Personnel security procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system, when required.

### **2.3.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.3.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PS-1
API 1164r2	3.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3, A, B.R1, B.1.1-1.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.21, App. C.2.1

## **2.3.2 Position Categorization**

### **2.3.2.1 Requirement**

The organization assigns a risk designation to all positions and establishes screening criteria for individuals filling those positions. The organization reviews and revises position risk designations periodically based on the organization's requirements or regulatory commitments.

### **2.3.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Designated officials within the organization assign a risk level for every position within the control system as determined by the position's potential for adverse impact to the integrity and efficiency of the control system.

### **2.3.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.3.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PS-2
API 1164r2	3.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3, B.R5.1, B.5.1.1
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.21

### **2.3.3 Personnel Screening**

#### **2.3.3.1 Requirement**

The organization screens individuals requiring access to the control system before access is authorized.

#### **2.3.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization maintains consistency between the screening process and organizational policy, regulations, guidance, and the criteria established for the risk designation of the assigned position.

Basic screening requirements include:

1. Past 5 years of employment
2. Past 5 years of education, with verification of the highest degree received
3. Past 3 years of residency
4. References
5. Past 5 years of law enforcement records.

#### **2.3.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization rescreens individuals with access to organizational control systems based on a defined list of conditions requiring rescreening and the frequency of such rescreening.

#### **2.3.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PS-3
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 004-3, B.R5.1, B.R5.1.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.21

### **2.3.4 Personnel Termination**

#### **2.3.4.1 Requirement**

When an employee is terminated, the organization revokes logical and physical access to control systems and facilities and ensures all organization-owned property is returned and that organization-owned documents and data files relating to the control system that are in the employee's possession are transferred to the new authorized owner within the organization. Complete execution of this control occurs within 24 hours for employees or contractors terminated for cause.

#### **2.3.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Organization-owned property includes system administration manuals, keys, identification cards, building passes, computers, cell phones, and personal data assistants. Organization-owned documents include field device configuration and operational information, control system network documentation.

Exit interviews ensure that individuals understand any security constraints imposed by being a former employee and that proper accountability is achieved for all system-related property.

#### **2.3.4.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

The organization implements automated processes to revoke access permissions that are initiated by the termination. Periodic reviews of physical and electronic access are conducted to validate that terminated account access was completed.

#### **2.3.4.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	PS-4
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 004-3, B.R4, B.4.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.2, App. C.2.2

### **2.3.5    Personnel Transfer**

#### **2.3.5.1    *Requirement***

The organization reviews electronic and physical access permissions to control systems and facilities when individuals are reassigned or transferred to other positions within the organization and initiates appropriate actions. Complete execution of this control occurs within 7 days for employees or contractors who no longer need to access control system resources.

#### **2.3.5.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Appropriate actions may include:

1. Returning old and issuing new keys, identification cards, and building passes
2. Closing old accounts and establishing new accounts
3. Changing system access authorizations
4. Providing access to official records created or managed by the employee at the former work location and in the former accounts.

#### **2.3.5.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

The organization periodically reviews existing authorized physical and electronic access permissions to ensure they are current. This check is to provide validation that transferred entities have been added, changed, or removed correctly from necessary physical and electronic access.

#### **2.3.5.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	PS-5
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 004-3, B.R4, B.4.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.2.2

### **2.3.6    Access Agreements**

#### **2.3.6.1    *Requirement***

The organization completes appropriate agreements for control system access before access is granted. This requirement applies to all parties, including third parties and contractors, who require access to the control system. The organization reviews and updates access agreements periodically.

### **2.3.6.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Access agreements include nondisclosure agreements, acceptable use agreements, rules of behavior, and conflict-of-interest agreements. Signed access agreements include an acknowledgment that individuals have read, understand, and agree to abide by the constraints associated with the control system to which access is authorized. Electronic signatures are acceptable for acknowledging access agreements unless specifically prohibited by organizational policy or applicable government regulations.

### **2.3.6.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.3.6.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PS-6

API 1164r2        2.4.2, 2.4.3

NERC CIPS        CIP 004-3, B.R4, B.R.4.1, B.4.2

NRC RG 5.71       App. B.1.1, App. B.1.21

## **2.3.7    Third-Party Personnel Security**

### **2.3.7.1    *Requirement***

The organization enforces security controls for third-party personnel and monitors service provider behavior and compliance.

### **2.3.7.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Third-party providers include service bureaus, contractors, and other organizations providing control system operation and maintenance, development, IT services, outsourced applications, and network and security management. The organization explicitly includes personnel security controls in acquisition-related contract and agreement documents.

### **2.3.7.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.3.7.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PS-7

API 1164r2        3.1

NERC CIPS        CIP 004-3, A-3, B.R2.1

NRC RG 5.71       App. B.1.1, App. B.1.21, App. B.1.22, App. B.3.11, App. C.3.5

## **2.3.8    Personnel Accountability**

### **2.3.8.1    *Requirement***

The organization employs a formal accountability process for personnel failing to comply with established control system security policies and procedures and clearly documents potential disciplinary actions for failing to comply.

### **2.3.8.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization ensures that the accountability process is consistent with applicable federal and local government statutory requirements (directives, policies, and regulations), standards, and guidance. The accountability process can be included as part of the organization's general personnel policies and procedures.

### **2.3.8.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.3.8.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PS-8

API 1164r2        1.2

NERC CIPS        CIP 003-3, B.R2.1-2.4

NRC RG 5.71       App. B.1.11, App. B.3.11

## **2.3.9    Personnel Roles**

### **2.3.9.1    *Requirement***

The organization provides employees and contractors with complete job descriptions and unambiguous and detailed expectations of conduct, duties, terms and conditions of employment, legal rights, and responsibilities.

### **2.3.9.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

None

### **2.3.9.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

Employees and contractors acknowledge understanding by signature.

### **2.3.9.4    *References***

API 1164r2        1.2, 3.1, Annex A

NERC CIPS        CIP 003-3, B.R2, R2.1-2.4

NRC RG 5.71       App. B.1.1, App. C.10.10

## **2.4    Physical and Environmental Security**

Physical and environmental security encompasses protection of physical assets from damage, misuse, or theft. Physical security addresses the physical security mechanisms used to create secure areas around hardware. Physical access control, physical boundaries, and surveillance are examples of security practices used to ensure that only authorized personnel are allowed to access control system equipment. Environmental security addresses the safety of assets from damage from environmental concerns. Control system equipment can be very expensive and may ensure human safety; therefore, protection is important from fire, water, and other possible environmental threats.

## **2.4.1    Physical and Environmental Security Policy and Procedures**

### **2.4.1.1    *Requirement***

The organization develops, implements, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented physical security policy that addresses:
  - a. The purpose of the physical security program as it relates to protecting the organization's personnel and assets
  - b. The scope of the physical security program as it applies to all the organizational staff and third-party contractors

- c. The roles, responsibilities, management commitment, and coordination among organizational entities of the physical security program to ensure compliance with the organization's security policy and other regulatory commitments.
- 2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the physical and environmental protection policy and associated physical and environmental protection controls.

#### **2.4.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the physical and environmental protection policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The organization includes the physical and environmental protection policy as part of the general control system security policy for the organization. The organization develops physical and environmental protection procedures for the security program in general and for a particular control system's components when required.

#### **2.4.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.4.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PE-1
API 1164r2	4, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 006-3c, A, B, R1
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.1, App. C.5.1

### **2.4.2 Physical Access Authorizations**

#### **2.4.2.1 Requirement**

The organization develops and maintains lists of personnel with authorized access to facilities containing control systems (except for areas within facilities officially designated as publicly accessible) and issue appropriate authorization credentials (e.g., badges, identification cards, smart cards). Designated officials within the organization review and approve the access list and authorization credentials at least annually, removing from the access list personnel no longer requiring access.

#### **2.4.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization promptly removes from the access list personnel no longer requiring access to facilities containing control system assets or who are denied access based on organizationally defined accountability procedures.

#### **2.4.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

- 1. The organization authorizes physical access to the facility where the control system resides based on position or role.
- 2. The organization requires two forms of identification to gain access to the facility where the control system resides.

#### **2.4.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PE-2
API 1164r2	4, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 006-3c, B.R1, R1.5
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.1.1, App. C.5.4

## **2.4.3 Physical Access Control**

### **2.4.3.1 Requirement**

Control: The organization:

1. Enforces physical access authorizations for all physical access points (including designated entry/exit points) to the facility where the control system resides (excluding those areas within the facility officially designated as publicly accessible)
2. Verifies individual access authorizations before granting access to the facility
3. Controls entry to facilities containing control systems using physical access devices and guards
4. Controls access to areas officially designated as publicly accessible in accordance with the organization's assessment of risk
5. Secures keys, combinations, and other physical access devices
6. Inventories physical access devices on a periodic basis
7. Changes combinations and keys on an organization-defined frequency and when keys are lost, combinations are compromised, or individuals are transferred or terminated
8. Controls and verifies physical access to information system distribution and transmission lines of communications within the organizational facilities
9. Controls physical access to information system output devices (e.g., monitors, speakers, printers) to prevent unauthorized individuals from observing and obtaining information access.

### **2.4.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Physical access devices include keys, locks, combinations, and card readers. Workstations and associated peripherals (monitors, speakers, and printing devices) connected to (and part of) an organizational system should be located in areas designated as limited access such as secure control rooms with access to such devices being safeguarded. This may include protecting, identifying, and inspecting information and communication lines for evidence of tampering. Where federal Personal Identity Verification (PIV) credential is used as an identification token and token-based access control is employed, the access control system conforms to the requirements of Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 201. If the token-based access control function employs cryptographic verification, the access control system conforms to the requirements of NIST SP 800-78. If the token-based access control function employs biometric verification, the access control system conforms to the requirements of NIST SP 800-76.

### **2.4.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization limits physical access to control system assets independent of the physical access security mechanisms for the facility.
2. The organization performs security checks at physical boundaries for unauthorized removal of information or system components.
3. The organization ensures that every physical access point to the facility where the system resides is guarded or alarmed and monitored 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.
4. The organization employs lockable physical casings to protect internal components of the system from unauthorized physical access.
5. The organization identifies and inspects information and communication lines for evidence of tampering.

#### **2.4.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PE-3, PE-4, PE-5
API 1164r2	4, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 006-3c, A, B, R1, R1.4
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.1.1, App. B.1.1, App. B.1.22, App. C.5.5, App. C.5.6

### **2.4.4 Monitoring Physical Access**

#### **2.4.4.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Monitors physical access to the control system to detect and respond to physical security incidents
2. Reviews physical access logs on an organization-defined frequency
3. Coordinates results of reviews and investigations with the organization's incident response capability.

#### **2.4.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Investigation of and response to detected physical security incidents, including apparent security violations or suspicious physical access activities are part of the organization's incident response capability.

#### **2.4.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization monitors real-time physical intrusion alarms and surveillance equipment.
2. The organization implements automated mechanisms to recognize potential intrusions and initiates designated response actions.

#### **2.4.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PE-6
API 1164r2	4, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 006-3c, A, B, R1, R1.6
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.1.1, App. B.1.1, App. C.5.8

### **2.4.5 Visitor Control**

#### **2.4.5.1 Requirement**

The organization controls physical access to the system by authenticating visitors before authorizing access to the facility where the system resides other than areas designated as publicly accessible.

#### **2.4.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Contractors and others with permanent authorization credentials are not considered visitors.

#### **2.4.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization escorts visitors and monitors visitor activity as required according to security policies and procedures.

The organization requires two forms of identification for access to the facility.

#### **2.4.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-7  
API 1164r2 Annex A  
NERC CIPS CIP 006-3c, A, B, R1, R1.6  
NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3.1.1, App. B.1.1

#### **2.4.6 Visitor Records**

##### **2.4.6.1 Requirement**

The organization maintains visitor access records to the control system facility (except for those areas within the facility officially designated as publicly accessible) that include:

1. Name and organization of the person visiting
2. Signature of the visitor
3. Form of identification
4. Date of access
5. Time of entry and departure
6. Purpose of visit
7. Name and organization of person visited.

##### **2.4.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Designated officials within the organization review the access logs after close-out and periodically review access logs based on an organization-approved frequency.

##### **2.4.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs automated mechanisms to facilitate the maintenance and review of access records.

#### **2.4.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-8  
API 1164r2 Annex A  
NERC CIPS CIP 006-3c, A, B, R1, R1.6, R1.6.1  
NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.1, App. C.5.9

#### **2.4.7 Physical Access Log Retention**

##### **2.4.7.1 Requirement**

The organization retains all physical access logs for as long as dictated by any applicable regulations or based on an organization-defined period by approved policy.

##### **2.4.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

None

##### **2.4.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.4.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-8  
API 1164r2 Annex A  
NERC CIPS CIP 006-3c, A, B, R7  
NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3.1.1, App. B.1.1, App. C.5, App. C5.9

### **2.4.8 Emergency Shutoff**

#### **2.4.8.1 Requirement**

The organization, for specific locations within a facility containing concentrations of control system resources, protects emergency power shutoff capability from unauthorized activation.

#### **2.4.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The design of the control systems facility includes an emergency shutoff to cut power to critical control system resources outside any area prone to flooding.

#### **2.4.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization protects the emergency power-off capability from accidental and intentional/unauthorized activation.

#### **2.4.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-10  
API 1164r2 Annex A  
NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2, App. C.3.11, App. C.6, App. C.8, App. C.9

### **2.4.9 Emergency Power**

#### **2.4.9.1 Requirement**

The organization provides a short-term uninterruptible power supply to facilitate an orderly shutdown of noncritical control system components in the event of a primary power source loss.

#### **2.4.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control may be satisfied by similar requirements fulfilled by another organizational entity other than the control system security program. Organizations should avoid duplicating actions already covered.

#### **2.4.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization provides a long-term alternate power supply for the system that is capable of maintaining minimally required operational capability in the event of an extended loss of the primary power source.
2. The organization provides a long-term alternate power supply for the system that is self-contained and not reliant on external power generation.

#### **2.4.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-11  
API 1164r2 4, Annex A  
NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2, App. C.3.11, App. C.6, App. C.8, App. C.9

## **2.4.10 Emergency Lighting**

### **2.4.10.1 Requirement**

The organization employs and maintains automatic emergency lighting systems that activate in the event of a power outage or disruption and includes lighting for emergency exits and evacuation routes.

### **2.4.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control may be satisfied by similar requirements fulfilled by another organizational entity other than the control system security program. Organizations should avoid duplicating actions already covered.

### **2.4.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.4.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-12

API 1164r2 4, Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2, App. C.9

## **2.4.11 Fire Protection**

### **2.4.11.1 Requirement**

The organization implements and maintains fire suppression and detection devices/systems that can be activated in the event of a fire.

### **2.4.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Fire suppression and detection devices/systems include sprinkler systems, handheld fire extinguishers, fixed fire hoses, and smoke detectors. This control may be satisfied by similar requirements fulfilled by another organizational entity other than the control system security program. Organizations should avoid duplicating actions already covered.

### **2.4.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs fire detection devices/systems that activate automatically and notify the organization and emergency responders in the event of a fire.
2. The organization employs fire suppression devices/systems that provide automatic notification of any activation to the organization and emergency responders.
3. The organization employs an automatic fire suppression capability in facilities that are not staffed continuously.

### **2.4.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-13

API 1164r2 Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2

## **2.4.12 Temperature and Humidity Controls**

### **2.4.12.1 Requirement**

The organization regularly monitors the temperature and humidity within facilities containing control system assets and ensures they are maintained within acceptable levels.

#### **2.4.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control may be satisfied by similar requirements fulfilled by another organizational entity other than the control system security program. Organizations should avoid duplicating actions already covered.

#### **2.4.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.4.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-14

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2

### **2.4.13 Water Damage Protection**

#### **2.4.13.1 Requirement**

The organization protects the control systems from damage resulting from water leakage by ensuring that master shutoff valves are accessible, working properly, and known to key personnel.

#### **2.4.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control may be satisfied by similar requirements fulfilled by another organizational entity other than the control system security program. Organizations should avoid duplicating actions already covered.

#### **2.4.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization implements automated mechanisms to close shutoff valves and provide notification to key personnel in the event of a water leak within facilities containing control systems.

#### **2.4.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-15

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2, C.9

### **2.4.14 Delivery and Removal**

#### **2.4.14.1 Requirement**

The organization authorizes and limits the delivery and removal of control system components (i.e., hardware, firmware, software) from control system facilities and maintains appropriate records and control of that equipment. The organization documents policies and procedures governing the delivery and removal of control system assets in the control system security plan.

#### **2.4.14.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization secures delivery areas and, if possible, isolates delivery areas from the control system to avoid unauthorized physical access.

#### **2.4.14.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.4.14.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-16

## **2.4.15 Alternate Work Site**

### **2.4.15.1 Requirement**

The organization establishes an alternate control center with proper equipment and communication infrastructure to compensate for the loss of the primary control system work site. The organization implements appropriate management, operational, and technical security measures at alternate control centers.

### **2.4.15.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Alternate work sites may include government facilities or private residences of employees. The organization may define different sets of security controls for specific alternate work sites or types of sites.

### **2.4.15.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization provides methods for employees to communicate with control system security staff in case of security problems.

### **2.4.15.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-17

API 1164r2 3.4

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3, B.R1.2.1, R3

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2, App. C.3.11, App. C.6, App. C.8, App. C.9

## **2.4.16 Portable Media**

### **2.4.16.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Establishes usage restrictions and implementation guidance for organization-controlled mobile devices
2. Authorizes connection of mobile devices to organizational control systems
3. Monitors for unauthorized connections of mobile devices to organizational control systems
4. Enforces requirements for the connection of mobile devices to organizational control systems
5. Disables control system functionality that provides the capability for automatic execution of code on removable media without user direction
6. Issues specially configured mobile devices to individuals traveling to locations that the organization deems to be of significant risk in accordance with organizational policies and procedures
7. Applies specified measures to mobile devices returning from locations that the organization deems to be of significant risk in accordance with organizational policies and procedures.

### **2.4.16.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Mobile devices include portable storage media (e.g., USB [Universal Serial Bus] memory sticks, external hard disk drives) and portable computing and communications devices with storage capability (e.g., notebook computers, personal digital assistants, cellular telephones). Usage restrictions and implementation guidance related to mobile devices can include configuration management, device identification and authentication, implementation of mandatory protective software (e.g., malicious code detection, firewall), scanning devices for malicious code, updating virus protection software, scanning for critical software updates and patches, conducting primary operating system (and possibly other resident

software) integrity checks, and disabling unnecessary hardware (e.g., wireless, infrared). Examples of control system functionality that provide the capability for automatic execution of code are AutoRun and AutoPlay.

Organizational policies and procedures for mobile devices used by individuals departing on and returning from travel include determining which locations are of concern, defining required configurations for the devices, ensuring that the devices are configured as intended before travel is initiated, and applying specific measures to the device after travel is completed. Specially configured mobile devices include computers with sanitized hard drives, limited applications, and additional hardening (e.g., more stringent configuration settings). Specified measures applied to mobile devices upon return from travel include examining the device for signs of physical tampering and purging/reimaging the hard disk drive. Protecting information residing on mobile devices is covered in the media protection family.

#### **2.4.16.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization restricts the use of writable, removable media in organizational control systems.
2. The organization prohibits the use of personally owned, removable media in organizational control systems.
3. The organization prohibits the use of removable media in organizational control systems when the media have no identifiable owner.

#### **2.4.16.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-2

API 1164r2 Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3, B.R7.1, R7.2

CAG CC-15

### **2.4.17 Personnel and Asset Tracking**

#### **2.4.17.1 Requirement**

The organization implements asset location technologies to track and monitor the movements of personnel and vehicles within the organization's controlled areas to ensure they stay in authorized areas, to identify personnel needing assistance, and to support emergency response.

#### **2.4.17.2 Supplemental Guidance**

None

#### **2.4.17.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Electronic monitoring mechanisms alert control system personnel when unauthorized access or an emergency occurs.

#### **2.4.17.4 References**

None

### **2.4.18 Location of Control System Assets**

#### **2.4.18.1 Requirement**

The organization locates control system assets to minimize potential damage from physical and environmental hazards and to minimize the opportunity for unauthorized access.

#### **2.4.18.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Physical and environmental hazards include flooding, fire, tornados, earthquakes, hurricanes, acts of terrorism, vandalism, electrical interference, and electromagnetic radiation. Where a completely enclosed (six-wall) border cannot be established, the organization implements and documents alternate measures to control physical access to the control system assets. Whenever possible, the organization also considers the location or site of the facility with regard to physical and environmental hazards. This control may be satisfied by similar requirements fulfilled by another organizational entity other than the control system security program. Organizations should avoid duplicating actions already covered.

#### **2.4.18.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization considers the risks associated with physical and environmental hazards when planning new control system facilities or reviewing existing facilities. Risk mitigation strategies are documented in the control system security plan.

#### **2.4.18.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PE-18
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3, B.R1-R4, CIP 006-3, B.R1.1
NRC RG 5.71	C.2, C.3.1, C.3.1.3, C.3.3.3, C.3.3.2.9, C.3.14, C.4

### **2.4.19 Information Leakage**

#### **2.4.19.1 Requirement**

The organization protects the control system from information leakage.

#### **2.4.19.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization considers all forms of information leakage such as removable media, official documents, remote access, misconfigured perimeter security devices, and electromagnetic signals emanations. This requirement supports confidentiality more than availability and, hence, is not as critical for control system applications.

The FIPS 199 security categorization (for confidentiality) of the system and organizational security policy guides the application of safeguards and countermeasures employed to protect the system against information leakage because of electromagnetic signals emanations.

#### **2.4.19.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.4.19.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PE-19
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.3 , C.3.2, App. B.2.5, App. B.5.1, App. C.2.1, App. C.3.4, App. C.3.11, App. C.6, App. C.8, App. C.9

### **2.4.20 Power Equipment and Power Cabling**

#### **2.4.20.1 Requirement**

The organization protects control system power equipment and power cabling from damage and destruction.

#### **2.4.20.2 Supplemental Guidance**

None

#### **2.4.20.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs redundant power equipment and parallel power cabling paths for the control system.

#### **2.4.20.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-9

API 1164r2 4, Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 C.2, C.3.1, C.3.3.2.9

### **2.4.21 Physical Device Access Control**

#### **2.4.21.1 Requirement**

The organization employs hardware (cages, locks, cases, etc.) to detect and deter unauthorized physical access to control system devices.

#### **2.4.21.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Tamper-evident hardware includes, but is not limited to: (1) metal or hard plastic production-grade enclosures, (2) opaque enclosures with tamper-evident seals or pick-resistant locks for doors or removable covers, and (3) tamper detection/response envelopes with tamper response.

#### **2.4.21.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization ensures that the ability to respond appropriately in the event of an emergency is not hindered by using tamper-evident hardware.

#### **2.4.21.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PE-3, PE-4, PE-5

API 1164r2 5.9, 8.1

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3.2.5, App. B.1.1, App. B.1.11, App. B.1.15, App. B.1.19, App. B.4.2, App. B.4.5, App. C.3.1, App. C.5.5, App. C.5.6

## **2.5 System and Services Acquisition**

Systems and services acquisition covers the contracting and acquiring of control system components, software, and services from third parties. The organization includes security as part of the acquisition process to ensure that the products received fit into the organization's security plan and have associated risk commensurate with defined risk acceptance levels. A strong policy with detailed procedures for reviewing acquisitions helps to eliminate the introduction of additional or unknown vulnerabilities into the control system.

### **2.5.1 System and Services Acquisition Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.5.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, system and services acquisition policy that includes control system security considerations and that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance

2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the system and services acquisition policy and associated system and services acquisition controls.

#### **2.5.1.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization ensures the system and services acquisition policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The system and services acquisition policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. System and services acquisition procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

#### **2.5.1.3     *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.5.1.4     *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-1
CAG	CC-3
API 1164r2	3.1
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.4, C.3.3.3, C.3.3.3.1

### **2.5.2     Allocation of Resources**

#### **2.5.2.1     *Requirement***

The organization:

1. Includes a determination of control system security requirements for the system in mission/business case planning
2. Determines, documents, and allocates the resources required to protect the control system as part of its capital planning and investment control process.

#### **2.5.2.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization determines the security controls for the control systems in mission/business case planning and establishes a discrete line item for control system security in its programming and budgeting documentation.

#### **2.5.2.3     *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.5.2.4     *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-2
API 1164r2	3.6
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.1, C.3.1.3, App. B.3.5

### **2.5.3     Life-Cycle Support**

#### **2.5.3.1     *Requirement***

The organization manages the control system using a system development life-cycle methodology that includes control system security considerations.

#### **2.5.3.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

None

### **2.5.3.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.5.3.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 SA-3

CAG                CC-7

NRC RG 5.71      C.4, C.4.1, C.4.2.1

## **2.5.4    *Acquisitions***

### **2.5.4.1    *Requirement***

The organization includes the following requirements and specifications, explicitly or by reference, in control system acquisition contracts based on an assessment of risk and in accordance with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, and standards:

- Security functional requirements/specifications
- Security-related documentation requirements
- Developmental and evaluation-related assurance requirements.

### **2.5.4.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The acquisition documents for control systems and services include, either explicitly or by reference, security requirements that describe: (1) required security capabilities (security needs and, as necessary, specific security controls), (2) required design and development processes, (3) required test and evaluation procedures, and (4) required documentation. The requirements in the solicitation documents permit updating security controls as new threats/vulnerabilities are identified and as new technologies are implemented.

### **2.5.4.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

1. The organization requires in acquisition documents that vendors/contractors provide information describing the functional properties of the security controls employed within the control system.
2. The organization requires in acquisition documents that vendors/contractors provide information describing the design and implementation details of the security controls employed within the control system (including functional interfaces among control components).
3. The organization limits the acquisition of commercial technology products with security capabilities to products that have been evaluated and validated through a government-approved process.

### **2.5.4.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 SA-4

CAG                CC-3, CC-7

NRC RG 5.71      C.3.3.3, App. B.5.4, App. C.12.4

## **2.5.5    *Control System Documentation***

### **2.5.5.1    *Requirement***

The organization:

1. Obtains, protects as required, and makes available to authorized personnel, administrator and user guidance for the control system that includes information on: (a) configuring, installing, and operating the system and (b) using the system's security features

2. Documents attempts to obtain control system documentation when such documentation is either unavailable or nonexistent (e.g., because of the age of the system or lack of support from the vendor/contractor) and provides compensating security controls, if needed.

#### **2.5.5.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Administrator and user guides need to include information on:

- The configuration, installation, operation, and trouble-shooting of the control system
- The operation and trouble-shooting of the control system's security features.

#### **2.5.5.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

1. The organization obtains, if available from the vendor/contractor, information describing the functional properties of the security controls employed within the control system.
2. The organization obtains, if available from the vendor/contractor, information describing the design and implementation details of the security controls employed within the control system (including functional interfaces among control components).
3. The organization obtains, if available from the vendor/contractor, information that describes the security-relevant external interfaces to the control system.

#### **2.5.5.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 SA-5

API 1164r2           Annex A, Annex B.1

NERC CIPS           CIP 002-3, B.R1-R4

NRC RG 5.71        C.4.2, C.4.2.1, C.5, App. A.3

### **2.5.6    Software License Usage Restrictions**

#### **2.5.6.1    *Requirement***

The organization:

1. Uses software and associated documentation in accordance with contract agreements and copyright laws
2. Employs tracking systems for software and associated documentation protected by quantity licenses to control copying and distribution
3. Controls and documents the use of publicly accessible peer-to-peer file sharing technology to ensure that this capability is not used for the unauthorized distribution, display, performance, or reproduction of copyrighted work.

#### **2.5.6.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization uses software and associated documentation in accordance with the software licensing agreement and applicable copyright laws. For software and associated documentation protected by quantity licenses, the organization employs tracking systems to control copying and distribution. The organization limits and documents the use of publicly accessible peer-to-peer file-sharing technology to ensure that this capability is not used for the unauthorized distribution, display, performance, or reproduction of copyrighted work.

#### **2.5.6.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.5.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-6
CAG	CC-2
API 1164r2	3.8
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.1, App. B.1.16, App. B.1.17, App. B.1.19, App. B.3.14, App. C.11.6

### **2.5.7 User-Installed Software**

#### **2.5.7.1 Requirement**

The organization implements policies and procedures to enforce explicit rules and management expectations governing user installation of software.

#### **2.5.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

If provided the necessary privileges, users have the ability to install software. The organization's security program identifies the types of software permitted to be downloaded and installed (e.g., updates and security patches to existing software) and types of software prohibited (e.g., software that is free only for personal, not government or corporate use, and software whose pedigree with regard to being potentially malicious is unknown or suspect).

#### **2.5.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.5.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-7
CAG	CC-2
API 1164r2	3.8, Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.7, App. C.13.1

### **2.5.8 Security Engineering Principles**

#### **2.5.8.1 Requirement**

The organization applies control system security engineering principles in the specification, design, development, and implementation of the system.

#### **2.5.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The application of security engineering principles is primarily targeted at new development control systems or control systems undergoing major upgrades and is integrated into the system development life cycle. For legacy control systems, the organization applies security engineering principles to system upgrades and modifications, to the extent feasible, given the current state of the hardware, software, and firmware components within the system.

#### **2.5.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization adopts software development standards and practices for trustworthy software throughout the development life cycle.
2. Trustworthy software reduces common design and coding errors that affect security, such as:
  - a. Unsafe buffer and string management
  - b. Languages that have unsafe buffer operations.

- 3 Trustworthy software development employs commercially available tools including a robust set of data validation and software quality assurance.

#### **2.5.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-8
CAG	CC-7, CC-16
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	C.C.8.1, C.8.4, C.10.2, C.10.3, C.12.3

### **2.5.9 Outsourced Control System Services**

#### **2.5.9.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Requires that providers of external control system services employ security controls in accordance with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, guidance, and established service-level agreements
2. Defines government oversight and user roles and responsibilities with regard to external control system services
3. Monitors security control compliance by external service providers.

#### **2.5.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Third-party providers are subject to the same control system security policies and procedures of the organization. All the contractors' equipment conforms to the same requirements as the organization's internal systems. Appropriate organizational officials need to approve outsourcing of control system services to third-party providers (e.g., service bureaus, contractors, and other external organizations). The outsourced control system services' documentation includes service provider and end-user security roles, responsibilities, and any service-level agreements. Service-level agreements define the expectations of performance for each required security control, describe measurable outcomes, and identify remedies and response requirements for any identified instance of noncompliance.

#### **2.5.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.5.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PS-7, SA-9
API 1164r2	1.2, Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.1, App. B.1.2, App. B.1.21, App. B.1.22, App. C.5.2

### **2.5.10 Developer Configuration Management**

#### **2.5.10.1 Requirement**

The organization requires that control system developers/integrators implement and document a configuration management process that (1) manages and controls changes to the system during design, development, implementation, and operation; (2) tracks security flaws; and (3) includes organizational approval of changes.

#### **2.5.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

None

### **2.5.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization requires that information system developers/integrators provide an integrity check of software to facilitate user verification of software integrity after delivery.
2. The organization provides an alternative configuration management process with organizational personnel in the absence of dedicated developer/integrator configuration management team.
3. Enhancement Supplemental Guidance: The configuration management process includes key organizational personnel that are responsible for reviewing and approving proposed changes to the informational system and security personnel that conduct impact analyses prior to the implementation of any changes to the system.

### **2.5.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-4, SA-10
CAG	CC-3, CC-7
API 1164r2	3.7, Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.3, C.4.2, App. B.5.2

## **2.5.11 Developer Security Testing**

### **2.5.11.1 Requirement**

The control system developer/integrator:

1. Develops a security test and evaluation plan
2. Implements a verifiable error remediation process to correct weaknesses and deficiencies identified during the security testing and evaluation process
3. Documents the result of the security testing/evaluation and error remediation processes.

### **2.5.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization does not perform developmental security tests on the production control system network. Functional acceptance and security verification checks need to be conducted on a representative testbed environment with issues documented, resolved, and retested before operational acceptance can be given. Once accepted, deployment needs to be in a controlled manner to mitigate inadvertent system upsets.

### **2.5.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization requires that control system developers/integrators employ code analysis tools to examine software for common flaws and document the results of the analysis.
2. The organization requires that control system developers/integrators perform a vulnerability analysis to document vulnerabilities, exploitation potential, and risk mitigations.
3. The organization requires that information system developers/integrators create a security test and evaluation plan and implement this plan under independent verification and validation.

### **2.5.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-11
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.12.5

## **2.5.12 Supply Chain Protection**

### **2.5.12.1 Requirement**

The organization protects against supply chain vulnerabilities employing controls defined to protect the products and services from threats initiated against organizations, people, information, and resources, possibly international in scope, that provides products or services to the organization.

### **2.5.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A supply chain is a system of organizations, people, activities, information, and resources, possibly international in scope, that provides products or services to consumers. Products and services in the domestic and international supply chain include hardware, software, and firmware components for systems, data management services, telecommunications service providers, and Internet service providers. Domestic and international supply chains are becoming increasingly important to the national and economic security interests of the United States because of the growing dependence on products and services produced or maintained in worldwide markets. Uncertainty in the supply chain and the growing sophistication and diversity of international cyber threats increase the potential for a range of adverse effects on organizational operations and assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation. Global commercial supply chains provide adversaries with opportunities to manipulate control system technology products that are routinely used by public and private sector organizations (e.g., suppliers, contractors) in the control systems that support U.S. critical infrastructure applications. Malicious activity at any point in the supply chain poses downstream risks to the mission/business processes that are supported by those control systems. To mitigate risk from the supply chain, a comprehensive security strategy should be considered that employs a strategic, organization-wide *defense-in-breadth* approach. A defense-in-breadth approach helps to protect control systems (including the technology products that compose those systems) throughout the System Development Life Cycle (i.e., during design and development, manufacturing, packaging, assembly, distribution, system integration, operations, maintenance, and retirement). The identification, management, and elimination of vulnerabilities at each phase of the life cycle and the use of complementary, mutually reinforcing strategies to mitigate risk are important components of a successful defense-in-breadth approach.

### **2.5.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization purchases all anticipated control system components and spares in the initial acquisition.
2. The organization employs trusted intermediaries for purchasing contract services, acquisitions, or logistical activities during the control system life cycle.
3. The organization conducts a due diligence review of suppliers prior to entering into contractual agreements to acquire control system hardware, software, firmware, or services.
4. The organization uses trusted shipping and warehousing for control systems, control system components, and technology products.
5. The organization uses a diverse set of suppliers for control systems, control system components, technology products, and control system services.
6. The organization uses standard configurations for control systems, control system components, and technology products.
7. The organization minimizes the time between purchase decisions and delivery of control systems, control system components, and technology products.
8. The organization employs independent analysis and penetration testing against delivered control systems, control system components, and technology products.

#### **2.5.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SA-12  
CAG CC-17  
NRC RG 5.71 App. C.12.2

#### **2.5.13 Trustworthiness**

##### **2.5.13.1 Requirement**

The organization requires that the control system meet an organization-defined level of trustworthiness.

##### **2.5.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The level of trustworthiness for organizational control systems is defined in terms of degree of correctness for intended functionality and of degree of resilience to attack by explicitly identified levels of adversary capability. In addition, but not as a replacement for this expression of degree of correctness and resilience, the level of trustworthiness may also be described in terms of levels of developmental assurance, that is, actions taken in the specification, design, development, implementation, and operation/maintenance of the control system that impact the degree of correctness and resilience achieved. Trustworthiness may be defined as different levels on the basis of component-by-component, subsystem-by-subsystem, function-by-function, or a combination of the above. However, typically functions, subsystems, and components are highly interrelated, making separation by trustworthiness perhaps problematic and, at a minimum, something that likely requires careful attention in order to achieve practically useful results.

##### **2.5.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization requires that software developers employ software quality and validation methods to minimize flawed or malformed software.

#### **2.5.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SA-13  
NRC RG 5.71 App. C.12.3

#### **2.5.14 Critical Information System Components**

##### **2.5.14.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Defines and documents all critical hardware and software system components that are in service
2. Upgrade existing limited legacy equipment with current or custom developed information system components.

##### **2.5.14.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The assumption is that information technology products defined by the organization cannot be trusted due to unacceptable threat potential from the supply chain. Examples would be legacy systems with no viable alternatives, or existing components that cannot be hardened or enhanced to the required level of high security assurance. The organization can deploy custom developed or compensating controls to achieve high assurance security requirements.

##### **2.5.14.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization:

1. Identifies information system components for which alternative sourcing is not possible

2. Employs compensating measures to ensure that critical security controls for the information system components are not compromised.

#### **2.5.14.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-14
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B.3.1.1
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.3, App. C.3.7, App. C.11.9

## **2.6 Configuration Management**

The organization's security program needs to implement policies and procedures that create a process by which the organization manages and documents all configuration changes to the control system. A comprehensive change management process needs to be implemented and used to ensure that only approved and tested changes are made to the control system configuration. Control systems need to be configured properly to maintain optimal operation. Therefore, only tested and approved changes should be allowed on a control system. Vendor updates and patches need to be thoroughly tested on a nonproduction control system setup before being introduced into the production environment to ensure no adverse effects occur.

### **2.6.1 Configuration Management Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.6.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented configuration management policy that addresses:
  - a. The purpose of the configuration management policy as it relates to protecting the organization's personnel and assets
  - b. The scope of the configuration management policy as it applies to all the organizational staff and third-party contractors
  - c. The roles, responsibilities, management accountability structure, and coordination among organizational entities contained in the configuration management policy to ensure compliance with the organization's security policy and other regulatory commitments.
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the configuration management policy and associated configuration management controls
3. The personnel qualification levels required to make changes, the conditions under which changes are allowed, and what approvals are required for those changes.

#### **2.6.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the configuration management policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The configuration management policy can be included as part of the general control system security policy for the organization. Configuration management procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system component when required. Configuration management should include hardware, software, versions, patches deployed, operational applications, security components, conduit schedules (for data and security items). Barcodes and RFID are commonplace means of tracking hardware and supporting elements (conduits).

#### **2.6.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.6.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-1
CAG	CC-2, CC-3, CC-4
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B.3.1.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3, B.R6, CIP 007-3, B.R1, B.R3
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.4, C.4.2, App. C.11.2

### **2.6.2 Baseline Configuration**

#### **2.6.2.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, documents, and maintains a current baseline configuration of the control system and an inventory of the system's constituent components.

#### **2.6.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control establishes a baseline configuration for the control system. The baseline configuration provides information about a particular component's makeup (e.g., the standard software load for a workstation or notebook computer including updated patch information) and the component's logical placement within the control system architecture. The baseline configuration also provides the organization with a well-defined and documented specification to which the control system is built, and deviations, if required, are documented in support of mission needs/objectives. The configuration of the control system component should be consistent with the organization's control system architecture and documentation policy. The inventory of control system components includes information (e.g., manufacturer, type, serial number, version number, and location) that uniquely identifies each component. Modern inventory control systems are frequently using radio-frequency identification (RFID) for ease of use and accuracy. Maintaining the baseline configuration involves creating a new baseline as the control system changes over time and keeping old baselines available for possible rollback.

#### **2.6.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization reviews and updates the baseline configuration as an integral part of control system component installations.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to maintain an up-to-date, complete, accurate, and readily available baseline configuration of the control system.
3. The organization maintains a baseline configuration for development and test environments that is managed separately from the operational baseline configuration.
4. The organization employs a deny-all, permit-by-exception authorization policy to identify software allowed on organizational control systems.

#### **2.6.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-2
CAG	CC-2, CC-3, CC-4
API 1164r2	3.6, Annex B.1.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3, B.R1, B.R3
NRC RG 5.71	C.4.2, App. C.11.3

## **2.6.3 Configuration Change Control**

### **2.6.3.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Authorizes and documents changes to the control system
2. Retains and reviews records of configuration-managed changes to the system
3. Audits activities associated with configuration-managed changes to the system.

### **2.6.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization manages configuration changes to the control system using an organizationally approved process (e.g., a Configuration Control Board). Configuration change control involves the systematic proposal, justification, implementation, test/evaluation, review, and disposition of changes to the control system, including upgrades and modifications. Because of the convergence of IT and control systems, configuration change control includes changes to the configuration settings for the control system and those IT products (e.g., operating systems, firewalls, routers) that are components of the control system. Each device on the control system contains a unique identifier (e.g., serial number, device name, tag number, RFID tag) that is referenced in the configuration management process. The organization includes emergency changes in the configuration change control process, including changes resulting from the remediation of flaws. The approvals to implement a change to the control system include successful results from the security analysis of the change. The organization audits activities associated with configuration changes to the control system.

A production control system may need to be taken offline, or replicated to the extent feasible, before the testing can be conducted. If a control system must be taken offline for tests, tests are scheduled to occur during planned control system outages whenever possible. In situations where the organization determines it is not feasible or advisable (e.g., adversely impacting performance, safety, reliability) to implement the live testing of the production control system, the organization documents the rationale for using a replicated system.

### **2.6.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to:
  - a. Document proposed changes to the control system
  - b. Notify appropriate approval authorities
  - c. Highlight approvals that have not been received in a timely manner
  - d. Inhibit change until necessary approvals are received
  - e. Document completed changes to the control system.
2. The organization tests, validates, and documents configuration changes (e.g., patches and updates) before installing them on the operational control system. The organization ensures that testing does not interfere with control system operations. The tester fully understands the corporate cyber and control system security policies and procedures and the specific health, safety, and environmental risks associated with a particular facility and/or process.

### **2.6.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CM-3

CAG CC-2, CC-3, CC-4

API 1164r2 3.6, Annex A, Annex B.3.1

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 B.R6, CIP 007-3. B.R1, B.R3

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.1.3, C.4.2, App. B.5.4, App. B.5.5, App. C.11.4

## **2.6.4 Monitoring Configuration Changes**

### **2.6.4.1 Requirement**

The organization implements a process to monitor changes to the control system and conducts security impact analyses to determine the effects of the changes.

### **2.6.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Prior to change implementation, and as part of the change approval process, the organization analyzes changes to the control system for potential security impacts. After the control system is changed, the organization should check the security features to ensure that the features are still functioning properly. Security impact analysis may also include an assessment of risk to understand the impact of the changes and to determine if additional safeguards and countermeasures are required. Security impact analysis is an important activity in the ongoing monitoring of security controls in the control system. The organization should audit activities associated with configuration changes to the control system. The organization considers control system safety and security interdependencies.

### **2.6.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.6.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CM-4

CAG CC-4

API 1164r2 3.6, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.1.1

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3. B.R1, B.R3

NRC RG 5.71 C.4.3, App. C.3.4, B.5.4, App. C.11.7, App. C.11.8

## **2.6.5 Access Restrictions for Configuration Change**

### **2.6.5.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Defines, documents, and approves individual access privileges and enforces physical and logical access restrictions associated with configuration changes to the control system
2. Generates, retains, and reviews records reflecting all such changes.

### **2.6.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Planned or unplanned changes to the hardware, software, and/or firmware components of the control system can potentially have significant effects on the overall security of the system. Accordingly, only qualified and authorized individuals are allowed to obtain access to control system components for purposes of initiating changes, including upgrades, and modifications. The organization establishes strict terms and conditions for installing any hardware or software on control system devices (e.g., modems, wireless adapters, multi-function printers, games, word processing software).

In addition, maintaining records of access is essential for ensuring that configuration change control is being implemented as intended and for supporting after-the-fact actions should the organization become aware of an unauthorized change to the control system. Access restrictions for change also include software libraries. Examples of access restrictions include physical and logical access controls, workflow automation, media libraries, abstract layers (e.g., changes are implemented into a third-party interface rather than directly into the control system component), and change windows (e.g., changes occur only

during specified times making unauthorized changes outside the window, easy to discover). Some or all the enforcement mechanisms and processes necessary to implement this security control are included in other controls. For measures implemented in other controls, this control provides information to be used in the implementation of the other controls to cover specific needs related to enforcing authorizations to make changes to the control system, auditing changes, and retaining and review records of changes.

#### **2.6.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to enforce access restrictions and support auditing of the enforcement actions.
2. The organization conducts audits of control system changes at a defined frequency and when indications so warrant to determine whether unauthorized changes have occurred.
3. The control system prevents the installation of device drivers that are not signed with an organizationally recognized and approved certificate.
4. Physical security to restrict data devices (compact disc [CD]/digital video disc [DVD], tape, serial ports, network ports, USB/secure digital memory card [SD] configuration devices) is required. Security authorization including two-man policies is required.

#### **2.6.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-5
CAG	CC-2, CC-3, CC-4
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R1, B.R3
NRC RG 5.71	C.4.2.1, C.4.3, App. B.1.1, App. B.5.4, App. B.5.5, App. C.11.6

### **2.6.6 Configuration Settings**

#### **2.6.6.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Establishes mandatory configuration settings for products employed within the control system
2. Configures the security settings of control systems technology products to the most restrictive mode consistent with control system operational requirements
3. Documents the changed configuration settings
4. Identifies, documents, and approves exceptions from the mandatory configuration settings for individual components within the control system based on explicit operational requirements
5. Enforces the configuration settings in all components of the control system
6. Monitors and controls changes to the configuration settings in accordance with organizational policies and procedures.

#### **2.6.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Configuration settings are the configurable parameters of the products that compose the control system. Organizations monitor and control changes to the configuration settings in accordance with organizational policies and procedures. In some industries, a mandated testing period is required, with separate approval needed before the test configuration settings can be deployed.

This control applies to remote assets (e.g., remote assets used to access the control system) as well as assets onsite.

### **2.6.6.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to centrally manage, apply, and verify configuration settings.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to respond to unauthorized changes to configuration settings.
3. The organization incorporates detection of unauthorized, security-relevant configuration changes into the organization's incident response capability to ensure that such detected events are tracked, monitored, corrected, and available for historical purposes.

### **2.6.6.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-6
CAG	CC-3, CC-4, CC-13
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R1, B.R3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.11.7

## **2.6.7    Configuration for Least Functionality**

### **2.6.7.1    *Requirement***

The organization configures the control system to provide only essential capabilities and specifically prohibits and/or restricts the use of functions, ports, protocols, and/or services as defined in an organizationally generated “prohibited and/or restricted” list.

### **2.6.7.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Control systems provide a wide variety of functions and services. Some of the default functions and services may not be necessary to support essential organizational operations (e.g., key missions, functions). The functions and services (e.g., voice-over internet protocol [VoIP], instant messaging, file transfer protocol, hypertext transfer protocol [HTTP], file sharing) provided by control systems should be carefully reviewed to determine which are candidates for elimination.

The organization considers disabling unused or unnecessary physical and logical ports (e.g., USB, Personal System/2, file transfer protocol [FTP]) on control system components to prevent unauthorized connection of devices (e.g., thumb drives, keystroke loggers). Organizations can use network scanning tools, intrusion detection and prevention systems, and end-point protections, such as firewalls and host intrusion detection systems, to identify and prevent the use of prohibited ports, protocols, and services. This can be third-party software or physical methods to control access.

### **2.6.7.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

1. The organization reviews the control system periodically or as deemed necessary to identify and eliminate unnecessary functions, ports, protocols, and/or services.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to prevent program execution in accordance with defined lists.
3. Use of configuration laptops and or removable electronic media sometimes cannot be avoided. In such cases, approved and authorized devices need to be documented, secured, and available only to specified and approved entities for use.
4. Six wall bordering requirements such as special equipment vaulting, two-man rules, and enhanced inventory control and authorization will be used.

5. In high security situations, it is necessary to separate the duties and access between the system administrator and the cybersecurity officer such that neither can make the changes by themselves. In this case, while the system administrator may have server permission, the security officer maintains and controls physical access to the server and/or dataport locking mechanisms.

#### **2.6.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-7
CAG	CC-2, CC-3, CC-4, CC-7, CC-13
API 1164r2	5.7, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R2, B.R2.1-2.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. 5.3, App. B.5.4, App. C.11.8

### **2.6.8 Configuration Assets**

#### **2.6.8.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, documents, and maintains an inventory of the components of the control system that:

1. Accurately reflects the current control system
2. Is consistent with the authorization boundary of the control system
3. Is at the level of granularity deemed necessary for tracking and reporting
4. Includes defined information deemed necessary to achieve effective property accountability.

#### **2.6.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Before a configuration management program can operate, all configurable items should first be uniquely identified and recorded. The organization determines the appropriate level of granularity for any control system component included in the inventory that is subject to management control (e.g., tracking, and reporting). The inventory of control system components includes any information determined to be necessary by the organization to achieve effective property accountability (e.g., manufacturer, model number, serial number, software license information, system/component owner, and for a networked component/device, the machine name and network address). In addition, configuration files, setpoints, alarm points, security filter rules, authorized and approved white lists, and permission files need to be documented and securely stored and backed up. This includes the current operational application files for the operational PLC elements. These files are crucial to effective disaster/incident recovery. The organization's maintenance program is responsible for configuration management tasks. Personnel performing maintenance on a control system should refer to and update the configurable assets list to ensure that all control system components are maintained and configured appropriately.

#### **2.6.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization updates the inventory of control system components and programming as an integral part of component installation, replacement and system updates.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to help maintain an up-to-date, complete, accurate, and readily available inventory of control system components, configuration files and setpoints, alarm settings and other required operational settings.
3. The organization employs automated mechanisms to detect the addition of unauthorized components/devices/component settings into the control system.

4. The organization disables network access by such components/devices or notifies designated organizational officials.
5. The organization includes in property accountability information for control system components, the names of the individuals responsible for administering those components.

#### **2.6.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-8
CAG	CC-1, CC-2, CC-4
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R1
NRC RG 5.71	App. 5.3, App. B.5.4, App. B5.5, App. C.11.8, App. C.11.9

### **2.6.9 Addition, Removal, and Disposal of Equipment**

#### **2.6.9.1 Requirement**

The organization implements policy and procedures to address the addition, removal, and disposal of all control system equipment. All control system assets and information are documented, identified, and tracked so that the location and function are known.

#### **2.6.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization sanitizes control system media, both paper and digital, before disposal or reuse. All control system media need to be tracked, documented, and verified as sanitized. The organization periodically verifies the media sanitization process.

#### **2.6.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. Specialized critical digital assets must require internal registration, configuration and usage plan, and secure storage before, during and after usage.
2. Critical Digital Assets in security arenas, such as laptop and desktop computers, network gear, hard drives, removable electronic media (e.g., CD/DVD/Tape/USB/SD), must be destroyed on removal from operations, or inspected and undergo approved, documented, de-sanitization procedures (deep formatting or destruction) on being removed from service.

#### **2.6.9.4 References**

CAG	CC-2
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3, B.R7, R7.1, R7.2, R7.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.5.1, App. B.5.5, App. C.1.6, App. C.11.2, App. C.11.9

### **2.6.10 Factory Default Authentication Management**

#### **2.6.10.1 Requirement**

The organization changes all factory default authentication credentials on control system components and applications upon installation.

#### **2.6.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Many control system devices and software are shipped with factory default authentication credentials to allow for initial installation and configuration. However, factory defaults are often well known or easily discoverable. They present an obvious security risk and, therefore, should be changed prior to the device being put into service. In addition, do not embed passwords into tools, source code, scripts, aliases,

or shortcuts. Known legacy components with these deficiencies need to be identified and targeted for higher priority in upgrade/replacement during the next maintenance/upgrade cycle.

#### **2.6.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Known legacy operational equipment needs compensatory access restrictions to protect against loss of authentication. In addition, these components need to be identified, tested, and documented to verify that proposed compensatory measures are effective.

#### **2.6.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IA-5
CAG	CC-4
API 1164r2	5.5, 5.6, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R5.1
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.1.4, App. B.1.20, App. B.4.1, App. B.4.7

### **2.6.11 Configuration Management Plan**

#### **2.6.11.1 Requirement**

The organization develops and implements a configuration management plan for the control system that:

1. Addresses roles, responsibilities, and configuration management processes and procedures
2. Defines the configuration items for the control system
3. Defines when (in the system development life cycle) the configuration items are placed under configuration management
4. Defines the means for uniquely identifying configuration items throughout the system development life cycle
5. Defines the process for managing the configuration of the controlled items.

#### **2.6.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Configuration items are the control system items (hardware, software, firmware, and documentation). Configuration management is the management of planned changes to those items. The configuration management plan satisfies the requirements in the organization's configuration management policy while being tailored to the individual control system. The configuration management plan defines detailed processes and procedures for how configuration management is used to support system development life-cycle activities at the control system level. It includes the steps for moving a change through the change management process; how configuration settings and configuration baselines are updated; how the control system component inventory is maintained; how development, test, and operational environments are controlled; and how documents are developed, released, and updated. The configuration management approval process includes designation of key management stakeholders that are responsible for reviewing and approving proposed changes to the information system and security personnel that would conduct an impact analysis prior to the implementation of any changes to the system.

#### **2.6.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization assigns responsibility for developing the configuration management process to organizational personnel that are not directly involved in system development.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—In the absence of a dedicated configuration management team, the system integrator may be tasked with developing a configuration management process.

#### **2.6.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CM-9
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3. B.R6
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.4, C.4.2, App. B.5.3, App. B.5.4, App. B.5.5, App. C.11.2

## **2.7 Strategic Planning**

Strategic planning maintains optimal operations and prevents or recovers from undesirable interruptions to control system operation. Interruptions may take the form of a natural disaster (hurricane, tornado, earthquake, flood, etc.), an unintentional manmade event (accidental equipment damage, fire or explosion, operator error, etc.), an intentional manmade event (attack by bomb, firearm or vandalism, hacker or malware, etc.), or an equipment failure. The types of planning considered are security planning to prevent undesirable interruptions, continuity of operations planning to maintain system operation during and after an interruption), and planning to identify mitigation strategies. The continuity of operations planning may also be designated as incident response planning. The planning process is the same for each type of plan. The following items should be considered when developing a plan.

### **2.7.1 Strategic Planning Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.7.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, planning policy that addresses:
  - a. The purpose of the strategic planning program as it relates to protecting the organization's personnel and assets
  - b. The scope of the strategic planning program as it applies to all the organizational staff and third-party contractors
  - c. The roles, responsibilities, coordination among organizational entities, and management accountability structure of the strategic planning program to ensure compliance with the organization's security policy and other regulatory commitments.
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the strategic planning policy and associated strategic planning controls.

#### **2.7.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The strategic planning policy may be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. Strategic planning procedures may be developed for the security program in general and a control system in particular, when required.

#### **2.7.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.7.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PL-1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3. through CIP 009-3
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1, C.3.1.1, C.3.3.3, App. C.13

## **2.7.2 Control System Security Plan**

### **2.7.2.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Develops a security plan for the system that:
  - a. Aligns with the organization's enterprise architecture
  - b. Explicitly defines the authorization boundary for the system
  - c. Describes relationships with or connections to other systems
  - d. Provides an overview of the security requirements for the system
  - e. Describes the security controls in place or planned for meeting those requirements
  - f. Specifies the authorizing official or authorizing official designated representative who reviews and approves the control system security plan prior to implementation.
2. Reviews the security plan for the system on an organization-defined frequency, at least annually
3. Revises the plan to address changes to the system/environment of operation or problems identified during plan implementation or security control assessments.

### **2.7.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The security plan is aligned with the organization's control system architecture and information security architecture. To develop properly the control system security plan, it is essential for a cross-functional cybersecurity team to share their varied domain knowledge and experience to evaluate and mitigate risk in the control system. The cybersecurity team considers control system safety and security interdependencies. The cybersecurity team includes members of the organization's IT staff, control system engineers, control system operators, members with network and system security expertise, members of the management staff, and members of the physical security department, at a minimum. In some smaller organizations, it may be necessary for personnel to perform multiple roles. For continuity and completeness, the cybersecurity team consults with the control system vendor(s) as well.

### **2.7.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Secure control system operations require more in-depth and specialized security plans, which limit data ports, physical access, specific data technology (Fiber), additional physical and electronic inspections and physical separation requirements.

### **2.7.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PL-2
API 1164r2	3, Annex B
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3. B.R1
NRC RG 5.71	C.2, C.3, App. B.1.2, App. C.10.4

## **2.7.3 Interruption Identification and Classification**

### **2.7.3.1 Requirement**

The organization identifies potential interruptions and classifies them as to "cause," "effects," and "likelihood."

### **2.7.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The various types of incidents that might be caused by system intrusion need to be identified and classified as to their effects and likelihood so that a proper response can be formulated for each potential

incident. The organization determines the impact to each system and the consequences associated with loss of one or more of the control systems. Proactive measurements are determined automatically to identify attacks during their early stages. The organization fully identifies any potential links between the corporate mission, safety, and the control system and incorporates this understanding into integrated security incident response procedures.

During postinterruption analysis activities, previously unforeseen consequences, especially those that may affect future application of the plan, need to be identified. Incidents may include risk events, near misses, and malfunctions. Also included should be any observed or suspected weaknesses in the control system or risks that may not have been previously recognized.

### **2.7.3.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.7.3.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 IR-8, PM-9

CAG                CC-10, CC-17

NERC CIPS        CIP 008-03 B.R1.1

NRC RG 5.71      C.2, C.3.1.2, App. C.3.4, App. C.8, App. C.8.1, App. C.8.4, App. C.8.8

## **2.7.4    Roles and Responsibilities**

### **2.7.4.1    *Requirement***

The organization's control system security plan defines and communicates the specific roles and responsibilities in relation to various types of incidents.

### **2.7.4.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization's control system security plan defines the roles and responsibilities of the various employees and contractors in the event of an incident. The plan identifies responsible personnel to lead the response effort if an incident occurs. Response teams need to be formed, including control system and other process owners, to reestablish operations. The response teams have a major role in the interruption identification and planning process. Several other standards and guidelines have begun separating out roles and responsibilities to separate control elements as necessary. Examples of differing roles and responsibilities would be Security Training versus Incident Management versus Patch Management.

### **2.7.4.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.7.4.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-5, AC-6, AC-8, AC-20, AT-2, AT-3, CM-9, PL-4, PS-2, PS-6, PS-7, SA-9

CAG                CC-18

API 1164r2       1.2, 3.1, Annex A, Annex B.5

NERC CIPS        CIP 008-3. B.R1.2

NRC RG 5.71      C.2, C.3.1.2, App. C.3.4, App. C.8, App. C.8.1, App. C.8.8, App. C.10.10

## **2.7.5 Planning Process Training**

### **2.7.5.1 Requirement**

The organization includes training on the implementation of the control system security plans for employees, contractors, and stakeholders into the organization's planning process.

### **2.7.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Advanced training, documentation and testing requirements and certifications are to be provided to individuals in the control system community to understand the content, purpose, and implementation of the security plans, procedures and functionality. The organization's planning process must account for training in the implementation of the organization's security plan. Different levels of training may be prepared for personnel with different levels of roles and responsibility. Cross-training might also be considered. Additional training controls are addressed in individual families.

### **2.7.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.7.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-5, CP-1, CP-3

CAG CC-20

API 1164r2 1.2, 3.1, Annex A, Annex B.5

NERC CIPS CIP 008-3. B.R1.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.4, App. C.8, App. C.8.1, App. C.8.4, App. C.8.8, App. C.10.4, App. C.10.6

## **2.7.6 Testing**

### **2.7.6.1 Requirement**

The organization regularly tests security plans to validate the control system objectives.

### **2.7.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Following the preparation of the various plans, a schedule is developed to review and test each of the plans and ensure that it continues to meet the objectives. Additional testing requirements are addressed in individual families.

### **2.7.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.7.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CP-2, CP-4, IR-3, SA-11, SI-4, SI-6

CAG CC-17

API 1164r2 3.5, 3.7, Annex A, Annex B.4

NERC CIPS CIP 008-3. B.R1, C, M1

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.4.9, App. C.8.3, App. C.9.3, App. C.13.1, App. C.13.2

## **2.7.7 Investigation and Analysis**

### **2.7.7.1 Requirement**

The organization includes investigation and analysis of control system incidents in the planning process.

### **2.7.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization develops an incident investigation and analysis program, either internally or externally, to investigate incidents. These investigations need to consider incidents based on the potential outcome as well as the actual outcome, recognizing that the cyber and control system incident may include intentional and/or unintentional incidents. The organization develops, tests, deploys, and fully documents an incident investigation process. The incident and analysis investigation program specifies the roles and responsibilities of local law enforcement and/or other critical stakeholders in an internal and shared incident investigation program. Incidents need to be analyzed in light of trends and recorded so they can be used for subsequent trend analyses.

### **2.7.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.7.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 IR-4

API 1164r2 3.5, Annex A, Annex B.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.4, App. C.8, App. C.8.1, App. C.8.4, App. C.8.8, App. C.10.10

## **2.7.8 Corrective Action**

### **2.7.8.1 Requirement**

The organization includes processes and mechanisms in the planning to ensure that corrective actions identified as the result of a cybersecurity and control system incidents are fully implemented.

### **2.7.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization reviews investigation results and determines corrective actions needed to ensure that similar events do not reoccur. The organization encourages and promotes cross-industry exchange of incident information and cooperation to learn corrective actions from the experiences of others.

### **2.7.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.7.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 IR-4

API 1164r2 3.5, Annex B.4

NERC CIPS CIP 009-3. B.R3

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.4, App. C.8, App. C.8.1, App. C.8.4, App. C.8.8

## **2.7.9 Risk Mitigation**

### **2.7.9.1 Requirement**

Risk-reduction mitigation measures are planned and implemented, and the results are monitored to ensure effectiveness of the organization's risk management plan.

### **2.7.9.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization's planning process develops step-by-step actions to be taken by the various organizations to implement the organization's risk mitigation plan. Risk mitigation measures need to be implemented, and the results need to be monitored against planned metrics to ensure the effectiveness of the risk management plan. The reasons for selecting or rejecting certain security mitigation mechanisms and the risks they address need to be documented by the organization's planning process.

### **2.7.9.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.7.9.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	PL-2, PM-9
API 1164r2	Annex B.3
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R8
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.13.2

## **2.7.10    System Security Plan Update**

### **2.7.10.1    *Requirement***

The organization regularly, at prescribed frequencies, reviews the security plan for the control system and revises the plan to address system/organizational changes or problems identified during system security plan implementation or security controls assessment.

### **2.7.10.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Significant changes need to be defined in advance by the organization and identified in the configuration management process.

### **2.7.10.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.7.10.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	PL-2
API 1164r2	3, Annex B.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3. B.R1.3, R4.3
NRC RG 5.71	C.4.1, C.4.2.2, App. B.3.1, App. C.3.1, App. C.7

## **2.7.11    Rules of Behavior**

### **2.7.11.1    *Requirement***

The organization establishes and makes readily available to all control system users a set of rules that describes their responsibilities and expected behavior with regard to control system usage. The organization obtains signed acknowledgment from users indicating that they have read, understand, and agree to abide by the rules of behavior before authorizing access to the control system.

### **2.7.11.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Electronic signatures are acceptable for use in acknowledging rules of behavior unless specifically prohibited by organizational policy.

### **2.7.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization includes in the rules of behavior, explicit restrictions on the use of social networking sites, posting information on commercial web sites, and sharing system account information.

### **2.7.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PL-4
API 1164r2	3. Annex A, Annex B.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3. B.R2, R2.5, R2.6
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.2, C.3.3.2.7, App. C.9.1

## **2.7.12 Security-Related Activity Planning**

### **2.7.12.1 Requirement**

The organization plans and coordinates security-related activities affecting the control system before conducting such activities to reduce the impact on organizational operations (i.e., mission, functions, image, and reputation), organizational assets, or individuals.

### **2.7.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Routine security-related activities include, but are not limited to, security assessments, audits, system hardware and software maintenance, security certifications, and testing/exercises. Organizational advanced planning and coordination include both emergency and nonemergency (i.e., routine) situations.

### **2.7.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.7.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PL-6
API 1164r2	3.5, 3.7, Annex A, Annex B.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3. B.R1
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.2, C.3.3.2.7, App. C.9.1, App. C.10.3, App. C.10.4

## **2.8 System and Communication Protection**

System and communication protection consists of steps taken to protect the control system and the communication links between system components from cyber intrusions. Although control system and communication protection might logically include both physical and cyber protection, this section addresses only cyber protection. Physical protection is addressed in Section 2.4.

### **2.8.1 System and Communication Protection Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.8.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented system and communication protection policy that addresses:
  - a. The purpose of the system and communication protection policy as it relates to protecting the organization's personnel and assets
  - b. The scope of the system and communication protection policy as it applies to all the organizational staff and third-party contractors

- c. The roles, responsibilities, coordination among organizational entities, and management accountability structure of the security program to ensure compliance with the organization's system and communications protection policy and other regulatory commitments
- 2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the control system and communication protection policy and associated systems and communication protection controls.

#### **2.8.1.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization ensures the system and communication protection policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The system and communication protection policy needs to be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. System and communication protection procedures can be developed for the security program in general and a control system in particular, when required.

#### **2.8.1.3     *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.8.1.4     *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-1
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3. B.R1 through R5
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.1.3, App. B.3.1, App. C.1.1, App. C.5.1

### **2.8.2     *Management Port Partitioning***

#### **2.8.2.1     *Requirement***

The control system components separate telemetry/data acquisition services from management port functionality.

#### **2.8.2.2     *Supplemental Guidance***

The control system management port needs to be physically or logically separated from telemetry/data acquisition services and information storage and management services (e.g., database management) of the system. Separation may be accomplished by using different computers, different central processing units, different instances of the operating systems, different network addresses, combinations of these methods, or other methods as appropriate.

#### **2.8.2.3     *Requirement Enhancements***

In situations where the ICS cannot separate user functionality from information system management functionality, the organization employs compensating controls (e.g., providing increased auditing measures).

#### **2.8.2.4     *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-2
API 1164r2	8.2, Annex B.3.1.4.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3. B.R2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.2, App. B.3.6, App. B.5.1, App. B.5.4, App. C.3.3, App. C.7, App. C.11

### **2.8.3 Security Function Isolation**

#### **2.8.3.1 Requirement**

The control system isolates security functions from nonsecurity functions.

#### **2.8.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The control system isolates security functions from nonsecurity functions by means of an isolation boundary (implemented via partitions, domains) that controls access to and protects the integrity of the hardware, software, and firmware that perform those security functions. The control system maintains a separate execution domain (e.g., address space) for each executing process.

Some legacy control systems may not implement this capability. In situations where it is not implemented, the organization details its risk acceptance and mitigation in the control system security plan.

#### **2.8.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system employs the following underlying hardware separation mechanisms to facilitate security function isolation.

- 1 The control system isolates security functions (i.e., functions enforcing access and information flow control) from both nonsecurity functions and from other security functions.
2. The control system minimizes the number of nonsecurity functions included within the isolation boundary containing security functions.
3. The control system security functions are implemented as largely independent modules that avoid unnecessary interactions between modules.
4. The control system security functions are implemented as a layered structure minimizing interactions between layers of the design and avoiding any dependence by lower layers on the functionality or correctness of higher layers.

#### **2.8.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-3

CAG CC-4, CC-5, CC-13, CC-15, CC-16

API 1164r2 5.1, Annex B.3.1.3

NERC CIPS CIP 005-3. B.R1.1 through R1.5, R2

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.2.1, App. B.1.20, App. B.3.2

### **2.8.4 Information in Shared Resources**

#### **2.8.4.1 Requirement**

The control system prevents unauthorized or unintended information transfer via shared system resources.

#### **2.8.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Control of system remnants, sometimes referred to as object reuse or data remnants, prevents information, including cryptographically protected representations of information previously produced by the control system, from being available to any current user/role/process that obtains access to a shared system resource (e.g., registers, main memory, secondary storage) after that resource has been released back to the system. This control does not address: (1) information remnants that refer to residual representation of data that have been in some way nominally erased or removed, (2) covert channels

where shared resources are manipulated to achieve a violation of information flow restrictions, or (3) components in the control system for which only a single user/role exists.

#### **2.8.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The information system does not share resources that are used to interface with systems operating at different security levels.

#### **2.8.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-4

API 1164r2 Annex B.3.1.3

NERC CIPS CIP 005-3. B.R2

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.3

### **2.8.5 Denial-of-Service Protection**

#### **2.8.5.1 Requirement**

The control system protects against or limits the effects of denial-of-service attacks based on an organization's defined list of types of denial-of-service attacks.

#### **2.8.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A variety of technologies exists to limit, or in some cases, eliminate the effects of denial-of-service attacks. For example, network perimeter devices can filter certain types of packets to protect devices on an organization's internal network from being directly affected by denial-of-service attacks.

#### **2.8.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The control system restricts the ability of users to launch denial-of-service attacks against other control systems or networks.
2. The control system manages excess capacity, bandwidth, or other redundancy to limit the effects of information flooding types of denial-of-service attacks.

#### **2.8.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-5

API 1164r2 Annex A, Annex B.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.4

### **2.8.6 Resource Priority**

#### **2.8.6.1 Requirement**

The control system limits the use of resources by priority.

#### **2.8.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Priority protection helps prevent a lower-priority process from delaying or interfering with the control system servicing any higher-priority process. This control does not apply to components in the system for which only a single user/role exists.

#### **2.8.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.8.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-6

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.5

#### **2.8.7 Boundary Protection**

##### **2.8.7.1 Requirement**

The organization defines the external boundaries of the control system. Procedural and policy security functions define the operational system boundary, the strength required of the boundary, and the respective barriers to unauthorized access and control of system assets and components. The control system monitors and manages communications at the operational system boundary and at key internal boundaries within the system.

##### **2.8.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Managed interfaces employing boundary protection devices include proxies, gateways, routers, firewalls, guards, or encrypted tunnels arranged in effective, organization-defined security architecture (e.g., routers protecting firewalls and application gateways residing on a protected subnetwork commonly referred to as a demilitarized zone). Control system boundary protections at any designated alternate processing/control sites provide the same levels of protection as that of the primary site.

As part of a defense-in-depth protection strategy, the organization considers partitioning higher-impact systems into separate physical domains (or environments) and applying the concepts of managed interfaces described above to restrict or prohibit network access in accordance with an organizational assessment of risk. FIPS 199 security categorization guides the selection of appropriate candidates for domain partitioning.

The organization carefully considers the intrinsically shared nature of commercial telecommunications services in the implementation of security controls associated with the use of such services. Commercial telecommunications services commonly are based on network components and consolidated management systems shared by all attached commercial customers and may include third-party-provided access lines and other service elements. Consequently, such interconnecting transmission services may represent sources of increased risk despite contract security provisions. Therefore, the organization either implements appropriate compensating security controls or explicitly accepts the additional risk.

Generally, public access to ICS information is not permitted. Allowing telecommunication and business IT traffic (e-mail, Internet access) on ICS systems is not recommended.

##### **2.8.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization physically allocates publicly accessible control system components to separate subnetworks with separate, physical network interfaces. Publicly accessible control system components include public web servers. Generally, no control system information should be publicly accessible.
2. The organization prevents public access into the organization's internal control system networks except as appropriately mediated.
3. The organization limits the number of access points to the control system to allow for better monitoring of inbound and outbound network traffic.
4. The organization implements a managed interface (boundary protection devices in an effective security architecture) with any external telecommunication service, implementing security measures appropriate to the required protection of the integrity and confidentiality of the information being transmitted.

5. The control system denies network traffic by default and allows network traffic by exception (i.e., deny all, permit by exception).
6. The organization prevents the unauthorized release of information outside the control system boundary or any unauthorized communication through the control system boundary when an operational failure occurs of the boundary protection mechanisms.
7. The organization prevents the unauthorized release of information across managed interfaces.
8. The control system checks incoming communications to ensure that the communications are coming from an authorized source and routed to an authorized destination.
9. The control system at managed interfaces, denies network traffic and audits internal users (or malicious code) posing a threat to external systems.
10. The control system prevents remote devices that have established connections with the system from communicating outside that communications path with resources on uncontrolled/unauthorized networks.
11. The control system routes all internal communications traffic to the Internet through authenticated proxy servers within the managed interfaces of boundary protection devices.
12. The organization selects an appropriate failure mode (e.g., fail open or fail close), depending on the critical needs of system availability.

#### **2.8.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-7
CAG	CC-4, CC-5, CC-13, CC-15, CC-16
API 1164r2	4, Annex A, Annex B
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3. A, B.R1
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.2.1, App. B.1.20

#### **2.8.8 Communication Integrity**

##### **2.8.8.1 Requirement**

The control system design and implementation protects the integrity of electronically communicated information.

##### **2.8.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

If the organization is relying on a commercial service provider for communication services as a commodity item rather than a fully dedicated service, it may be more difficult to obtain the necessary assurances regarding the implementation of needed security measures for transmission integrity. When it is infeasible or impractical to obtain the necessary assurances of effective security through appropriate contracting vehicles, the organization either implements appropriate compensating security measures or explicitly accepts the additional risk.

##### **2.8.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs cryptographic mechanisms to ensure recognition of changes to information during transmission unless otherwise protected by alternative physical measures (e.g., protective distribution systems).
2. The use of cryptography within a control system will introduce latency to control system communication. The latency introduced from the use of cryptographic mechanisms must not degrade the operational performance of the control system or impact personnel safety.

3. Failure of a cryptographic mechanism must not create a denial of service. Control systems generally support the objectives of availability, integrity, and confidentiality. Therefore, the use of cryptography should be determined after careful consideration.
4. The control system maintains the integrity of information during aggregation, packaging, and transformation in preparation for transmission.

#### **2.8.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-8  
 API 1164r2 8, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.1  
 NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.6

### **2.8.9 Communication Confidentiality**

#### **2.8.9.1 Requirement**

The control system design and implementation protects the confidentiality of communicated information where necessary.

#### **2.8.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The use of a third-party communication service provider instead of organization-owned infrastructure may warrant the use of encryption. The use of cryptographic mechanisms within a control system could introduce communications latency because of the additional time and computing resources required to encrypt, decrypt, and authenticate each message. Any latency induced from the use of cryptographic mechanisms must not degrade the operational performance of the control system.

#### **2.8.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs cryptographic mechanisms to prevent unauthorized disclosure of information during transmission unless otherwise protected by alternative physical measures.
2. The control system maintains the confidentiality of information during aggregation, packaging, and transformation in preparation for transmission.

#### **2.8.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-9  
 CAG CC-4, CC-14  
 API 1164r2 8  
 NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.17, App. B.3.7

### **2.8.10 Trusted Path**

#### **2.8.10.1 Requirement**

The control system establishes a trusted communications path between the user and the system.

#### **2.8.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A trusted path is employed for high-confidence connections between the security functions of the control system and the user (e.g., for login).

Login-to-operator interface should be protected by trusted path or a compensating control. A trusted path is a mechanism by which a person at a terminal can communicate directly with the Trusted Computing Base (TCB) that provides the security functions of the system. This mechanism can only be activated by the person or the TCB and cannot be imitated by untrusted software. The TCB is the totality

of protection mechanisms within a computer system—including hardware, firmware, and software—the combination of which is responsible for enforcing a security policy. A TCB consists of one or more components that together enforce a unified security policy over a product or system. The ability of a TCB to enforce correctly a security policy depends solely on the mechanisms within the TCB and on the correct input by system administrative personnel of parameters (e.g., a user's clearance) related to the security policy.

#### **2.8.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.8.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-11

API 1164r2 8.1, Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.22, App. B.3.9

### **2.8.11 Cryptographic Key Establishment and Management**

#### **2.8.11.1 Requirement**

When cryptography is required and employed within the control system, the organization establishes and manages cryptographic keys using automated mechanisms with supporting procedures or manual procedures.

#### **2.8.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Organizations need to select cryptographic protection that matches the value of the information being protected and the control system operating constraints. A formal written policy needs to be developed to document the practices and procedures relating to cryptographic key establishment and management. These policies and procedures need to address, under key establishment, such items as key generation process in accordance with a specified algorithm and key sizes based on an assigned standard. Key generation must be performed using an effective random number generator. The policies for key management need to address such items as periodic key changes, key destruction, and key distribution in accordance with defined standards.

#### **2.8.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization maintains availability of information in the event of the loss of cryptographic keys by users.

#### **2.8.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-12

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.9

### **2.8.12 Use of Validated Cryptography**

#### **2.8.12.1 Requirement**

The organization develops and implements a policy governing the use of cryptographic mechanisms for the protection of control system information. The organization ensures all cryptographic mechanisms comply with applicable laws, regulatory requirements, directives, policies, standards, and guidance.

#### **2.8.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Any cryptographic modules deployed within a control system, at a minimum, must be able to meet the FIPS 140-2. Assessment of the modules must include validation of the cryptographic modules operating in approved modes of operation. The most effective safeguard is to use a cryptographic module

validated by the Cryptographic Module Validation Program. Additional information on the use of validated cryptography can be found at <http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/STM/cmvp/index.html>.

#### **2.8.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization protects cryptographic hardware from physical tampering and uncontrolled electronic connections.
2. The organization selects cryptographic hardware with remote key management capabilities.

#### **2.8.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-13

CAG CC-15

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.10

### **2.8.13 Collaborative Computing Devices**

#### **2.8.13.1 Requirement**

The use of collaborative computing devices on the control system is strongly discouraged. If use is authorized and allowed by the organization, explicit indication of use is provided to users physically present at the devices.

#### **2.8.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Collaborative computing devices include video and audio conferencing capabilities, networked information boards, or instant messaging technologies. Explicit indication of use includes signals to local users when cameras and microphones are activated.

#### **2.8.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. If collaborative computing devices are used on the control system, they are disconnected and powered down when not in use.
2. The control system or supporting environment blocks both inbound and outbound traffic between instant messaging clients that are independently configured by end users and external service providers.
3. The organization disables or removes collaborative computing devices from control systems in organization-defined secure work areas.

#### **2.8.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-15

API 1164r2 7.15, 7.3, Annex B.3.1.4.3

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.11

### **2.8.14 Transmission of Security Attributes**

#### **2.8.14.1 Requirement**

The control system reliably associates security attributes (e.g., security labels and markings) with information exchanged between the enterprise systems and the control system.

#### **2.8.14.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Security attributes may be explicitly or implicitly associated with the information contained within the control system. For example, security labels are often used in data structures to associate attributes with specific information objects such as user access privileges, nationality, or affiliation as a contractor.

### **2.8.14.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system validates the integrity of security parameters exchanged between systems.

### **2.8.14.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-16

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.12

## **2.8.15 Public Key Infrastructure Certificates**

### **2.8.15.1 Requirement**

The organization issues public key certificates under an appropriate certificate policy or obtains public key certificates under an appropriate certificate policy from an approved service provider.

### **2.8.15.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Registration to receive a public key certificate needs to include authorization by a supervisor or a responsible official and needs to be accomplished using a secure process that verifies the identity of the certificate holder and ensures that the certificate is issued to the intended party.

### **2.8.15.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Any latency induced from the use of public key certificates must not degrade the operational performance of the control system.

### **2.8.15.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-17

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.22, App. B.3.13

## **2.8.16 Mobile Code**

### **2.8.16.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Establishes usage restrictions and implementation guidance for mobile code technologies based on the potential to cause damage to the control system if used maliciously
2. Documents, monitors, and manages the use of mobile code within the control system. Appropriate organizational officials authorize the use of mobile code.

### **2.8.16.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Mobile code technologies include Java, JavaScript, ActiveX, portable document format (PDF), Postscript, Shockwave movies, Flash animations, and VBScript. Usage restrictions and implementation guidance need to apply to both the selection and use of mobile code installed on organizational servers and mobile code downloaded and executed on individual workstations. Control procedures need to prevent the development, acquisition, or introduction of unacceptable mobile code within the control system. Additional information on risk-based approaches for the implementation of mobile code technologies can be found at <http://iase.disa.mil/mcp/index.html>. This link to the Mobile Code Policy and Guidance has been moved to the Department of Defense Public Key Infrastructure (PKI)-certified protected area of Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) A person must have the proper authority for access to this document.

### **2.8.16.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system implements detection and inspection mechanisms to identify unauthorized mobile code and takes corrective actions, when necessary.

#### **2.8.16.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-18
CAG	CC-5, CC-12
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.22, App. B.3.14

### **2.8.17 Voice-Over Internet Protocol**

#### **2.8.17.1 Requirement**

The organization: (1) establishes usage restrictions and implementation guidance for VoIP technologies based on the potential to cause damage to the system if used maliciously and (2) authorizes, monitors, and controls the use of VoIP within the control system.

#### **2.8.17.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Generally, VoIP technologies should not be employed on control systems. Usage should be determined after careful consideration and after verification that it does not adversely impact the operational parameters of the ICS.

#### **2.8.17.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.8.17.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-19
API 1164r2	7.3.6

### **2.8.18 System Connections**

#### **2.8.18.1 Requirement**

All external control system and communication connections are identified and protected from tampering or damage.

#### **2.8.18.2 Supplemental Guidance**

External access point connections to the control system need to be secured to protect the system. Access points include any externally connected communication end point (for example, dialup modems) terminating at any device within the electronic security perimeter. The first step in securing these connections is to identify the connections along with the purpose and necessity of the connection. This information needs to be documented, tracked, and audited periodically. After identifying these connection points, the extent of their protection needs to be determined. Policies and procedures need to be developed and implemented to protect the connection to the business or enterprise system. This might include disabling the connection except when specific access is requested for a specific need, automatic timeout for the connection, etc.

#### **2.8.18.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.8.18.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-3
CAG	CC-5
API 1164r2	3.6, Annex B.1, B.2, B.3
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3. B.R1 through R1.3

NRC RG 5.71      C.3.1.3, C.3.1.4, App. B.1.1, App. B.1.22, App. B.4.5, App. B.5.2, App. C.3.4, App. C.7, App. C.9.1, App. C.11.3

## **2.8.19 Security Roles**

### **2.8.19.1 Requirement**

The control system design and implementation specifies the security roles and responsibilities for the users of the system.

### **2.8.19.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Security roles and responsibilities for control system users need to be specified, defined, and implemented based on the sensitivity of the information handled by the user. These roles may be defined for specific job descriptions or for individuals.

### **2.8.19.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.8.19.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-5, PS-2

API 1164r2      1.2, Annex A

NERC CIPS      CIP 002-3, through CIP 009-3

NRC RG 5.71      C.3.3.1.1, App. B.1.1, App. B.1.22, App. C.10.10

## **2.8.20 Session Authenticity**

### **2.8.20.1 Requirement**

The control system provides mechanisms to protect the authenticity of device-to-device communications sessions.

### **2.8.20.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Message authentication provides protection from malformed traffic from misconfigured devices and malicious entities. The intent is to establish confidence at each end of a communications session with respect to the validity of the data and the identity of the sender. This is to address man-in-the middle attacks, which can include session hijacking, insertion of fake information, or instruction sets in the middle of a session.

In situations where the ICS cannot protect the authenticity of communications sessions, the organization employs compensating controls (e.g., auditing measures, isolation/segmented architecture, additional physical isolation). Enhanced auditing measures or encryption mechanisms designed to enhance session authenticity must not impact ICS operations by consuming too many available resources or by slowing down communications to an unacceptable level as to constitute a self-inflicted denial-of-service attack.

### **2.8.20.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Message authentication mechanisms should be implemented at the protocol level for both serial and routable protocols.

### **2.8.20.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-23

API 1164r2      5.9, 7.2.2, 8.1, Annex A, Annex B.1, B.2, B.3

NRC RG 5.71      App. 3.1.1, App. B.3.6, App. B.3.18

## **2.8.21 Architecture and Provisioning for Name/Address Resolution Service**

### **2.8.21.1 Requirement**

The control system devices that collectively provide name/address resolution services for an organization are fault tolerant and implement address space separation.

### **2.8.21.2 Supplemental Guidance**

In general, do not use domain name system (DNS) services on a control system. Host-based name resolution solutions are the recommended practice. However, if DNS services are implemented, deploy at least two authoritative DNS servers. The DNS configuration on the host will reference one DNS server as the primary source and the other as the secondary source. In addition, locate the two DNS servers on different network subnets and separate geographically. If control system resources are accessible from external networks, establish authoritative DNS servers with separate address space views (internal and external) to the control system resources. The DNS server with the internal view provides name/address resolution services within the control system boundary. The DNS server with the external view only provides name/address resolution information pertaining to control system resources accessible from external resources. The list of clients who can access the authoritative DNS server with a particular view is also specified.

### **2.8.21.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The use of secure name/address resolution services must not adversely impact the operational performance of the control system.

### **2.8.21.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-22

CAG                CC-16

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.3.6, App. B.3.17

## **2.8.22 Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Authoritative Source)**

### **2.8.22.1 Requirement**

The control system resource (i.e., authoritative DNS server) that provides name/address resolution service provides additional artifacts (e.g., digital signatures and cryptographic keys) along with the authoritative DNS resource records it returns in response to resolution queries.

### **2.8.22.2 Supplemental Guidance**

In general, do not use DNS services on a control system. Host-based name resolution solutions are best practice. This requirement enables remote clients to obtain origin authentication and integrity verification assurances for the name/address resolution information obtained through the service. A DNS server is an example of control system resource that provides name/address resolution service; digital signatures and cryptographic keys are examples of additional artifacts; and DNS resource records are examples of authoritative data.

### **2.8.22.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system, when operating as part of a distributed, hierarchical namespace, provides the means to indicate the security status of child subspaces and (if the child supports secure resolution services) enable verification of a chain of trust among parent and child domains.

#### **2.8.22.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-20
CAG	CC-16
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.15

### **2.8.23 Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Recursive or Caching Resolver)**

#### **2.8.23.1 Requirement**

The control system resource (i.e., resolving or caching name server) that provides name/address resolution service for local clients performs data origin authentication and data integrity verification on the resolution responses it receives from authoritative DNS servers when requested by client systems.

#### **2.8.23.2 Supplemental Guidance**

In general, do not use DNS services on a control system. Host-based name resolution solutions are best practice. A resolving or caching DNS server is an example of a control system resource that provides name/address resolution service for local clients, and authoritative DNS servers are examples of authoritative sources.

#### **2.8.23.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system resource that implements DNS services performs data origin authentication and data integrity verification on all resolution responses whether local DNS clients (i.e., stub resolvers) explicitly request this function.

#### **2.8.23.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-21
CAG	CC-16
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.16, App. B.3.18, App. B.4.4

### **2.8.24 Fail in Known State**

#### **2.8.24.1 Requirement**

The control system fails to a known state for defined failures.

#### **2.8.24.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Failure in a known state can be interpreted by organizations in the context of safety or security in accordance with the organization's mission/business/operational needs. Failure in a known secure state helps prevent a loss of confidentiality, integrity, or availability in the event of a failure of the control system or a component of the system. Failure in a known safe state helps prevent systems from failing to a state that may cause injury to individuals or destruction to property.

#### **2.8.24.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system preserves defined system state information in failure.

#### **2.8.24.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-24
CAG	CC-14
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.17, App. B.3.22

## **2.8.25 Thin Nodes**

### **2.8.25.1 Requirement**

The control system employs processing components that have minimal functionality and data storage.

### **2.8.25.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The deployment of control system components with minimal functionality (e.g., diskless nodes and thin client technologies) reduces the number of endpoints to be secured and may reduce the exposure of information, control systems, and services to a successful attack.

### **2.8.25.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Use secure data transmission media, such as fiber optic technology, to minimize data loss from eavesdropping and data tapping.

### **2.8.25.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-25

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.19

## **2.8.26 Honeypots**

### **2.8.26.1 Requirement**

The control system includes components specifically designed to be the target of malicious attacks for the purpose of detecting, deflecting, analyzing, and tracking such attacks.

### **2.8.26.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Not all ICS users should use honeypots. Only specialized entities using nonoperational equipment in highly isolated and protected zones should attempt deployment of honeypots. Created honeypots determine if active entities are attacking/probing the particular configuration the honeypot is mimicking. If deployed incorrectly, this technique can lead to a direct shortcut of established cybersecurity measures. This is a very specialized and limited application and should not be widely used.

### **2.8.26.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system includes components that proactively seek to identify web-based malicious code.

### **2.8.26.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-26

CAG CC-12

## **2.8.27 Operating System-Independent Applications**

### **2.8.27.1 Requirement**

The control system includes organization-defined applications that are independent of the operating system.

### **2.8.27.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Operating system-independent applications are applications that can run on multiple operating systems. Such applications promote portability and reconstitution on different platform architectures, thus increasing the availability for critical functionality while an organization is under an attack exploiting vulnerabilities in a given operating system.

### **2.8.27.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.8.27.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-27

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.12.5

## **2.8.28 Confidentiality of Information at Rest**

### **2.8.28.1 Requirement**

The control system protects the confidentiality of information at rest. Examples of data at rest are: configuration files and settings, alarm point setting, password files, and security filter rules.

### **2.8.28.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control is intended to address the confidentiality of information in nonmobile devices.

### **2.8.28.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs cryptographic mechanisms to prevent unauthorized disclosure of information at rest unless otherwise protected by alternative physical measures.

### **2.8.28.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-28

CAG CC-15

API 1164r2 Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.20

## **2.8.29 Heterogeneity**

### **2.8.29.1 Requirement**

The organization employs diverse technologies in the implementation of the control system.

### **2.8.29.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Increasing the diversity of technologies within the control system reduces the impact from the exploitation of a specific technology.

### **2.8.29.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.8.29.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-29

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.21

## **2.8.30 Virtualization Techniques**

### **2.8.30.1 Requirement**

The organization employs virtualization techniques to present gateway components into control systems environments as other types of components or components with differing configurations.

### **2.8.30.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Virtualization techniques provide organizations with the ability to disguise gateway components into control systems environments, potentially reducing the likelihood of successful attacks without the cost of having multiple platforms.

### **2.8.30.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs virtualization techniques to deploy a diversity of operating systems environments and applications.
2. The organization changes the diversity of operating systems and applications on an organization-defined frequency.
3. The organization employs randomness in the implementation of the virtualization.

### **2.8.30.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-30  
CAG CC-5

## **2.8.31 Covert Channel Analysis**

### **2.8.31.1 Requirement**

The organization requires that control system developers/integrators perform covert channel analysis to identify those aspects of system communication that are potential avenues for covert storage and timing channels.

### **2.8.31.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Control system developers/integrators are in the best position to identify potential avenues within the system that might lead to covert channels. Covert channel analysis is a meaningful activity when the potential exists for unauthorized information flows across security domains in the case of control systems containing export controlled information and having connections to the Internet.

### **2.8.31.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization tests a subset of the vendor identified covert channel avenues to determine if they are exploitable.

### **2.8.31.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-31  
CAG CC-5

## **2.8.32 Information System Partitioning**

### **2.8.32.1 Requirement**

The organization partitions the information system into components residing in separate physical domains (or environments) as necessary.

### **2.8.32.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Information system partitioning is a part of a defense-in-depth protection strategy. An organizational assessment of risk guides the partitioning of information system components into separate physical domains (or environments). The security categorization also guides the selection of appropriate candidates for domain partitioning when system components can be associated with different system impact levels derived from the categorizations. Managed interfaces restrict or prohibit network access and information flow among partitioned information system components.

### **2.8.32.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.8.32.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-32

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.2.2

## **2.8.33 Transmission Preparation Integrity**

### **2.8.33.1 Requirement**

The information system protects the integrity of information during the processes of data aggregation, packaging, and transformation in preparation for transmission.

### **2.8.33.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Information can be subjected to unauthorized changes (i.e., malicious and unintentional modification) at information aggregation or protocol transformation points.

### **2.8.33.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.8.33.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-33

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.6

## **2.8.34 Non-Modifiable Executable Programs**

### **2.8.34.1 Requirement**

The information system:

1. Loads and executes the operating system software from hardware-enforced, read-only media
2. Loads and executes authorized applications from hardware-enforced, read-only media.

### **2.8.34.2 Supplemental Guidance**

In this control, operating system software is defined as the base code on which applications are hosted. Hardware-enforced, read-only media include CD-R/DVD-Rs. The use of nonmodifiable storage media ensures the integrity of the software from the point of creation as a read-only image.

### **2.8.34.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs system components with no writable storage that is persistent across component restart or power on/off cycles.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—This control enhancement eliminates the possibility of malicious code insertion via persistent, writeable storage within the designated information system component and requires that no removable storage be employed.

2. The Organization protects the integrity of the information on read-only media.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—This control enhancement covers protection of the integrity of information placed on read-only media, controlling the media after information has been recorded onto the media. Measures may include a combination of prevention and detection/response.

### **2.8.34.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-34

## **2.9 Information and Document Management**

Information and document management is generally a part of the company records retention and document management system. Digital and hardcopy information associated with the development and execution of a control system is important and sensitive and needs to be managed. Control system design, operations data and procedures, risk analyses, business impact studies, risk tolerance profiles, etc., contain sensitive company information and need to be protected. Security measures, philosophy, and implementation strategies are other examples. In addition, business conditions change and require updated analyses and studies. Care is given to protect this information and verify that the appropriate versions are retained. Inherent in this is an information classification system that allows information assets to receive the appropriate level of protection.

The following are the controls for Information and Document Management that need to be supported and implemented by the organization to protect the control system.

### **2.9.1 Information and Document Management Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.9.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, control system information and document management policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the control system information and document management policy and associated system maintenance controls.

#### **2.9.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the control system information and document management policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The control system information and document management policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. System information and document management procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

#### **2.9.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.9.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-1
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3. through CIP 009-3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.1, App. C.11

## **2.9.2 Information and Document Retention**

#### **2.9.2.1 Requirement**

The organization manages control system-related data, including establishing retention policies and procedures for both electronic and paper data and manages access to the data based on formally assigned roles and responsibilities.

### **2.9.2.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization develops policies and procedures detailing the retention of company information. These procedures address retention/destruction issues for all applicable information media. Any legal or regulatory requirements are considered when developing these policies and procedures. Information associated with the development and execution of a control system is important, sensitive, and needs to be appropriately managed. The National Archives and Records Administration provides guidance on records retention.

### **2.9.2.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

The organization performs legal reviews of the retention policies to ensure compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.

### **2.9.2.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 SI-12

API 1164r2         Annex A

NERC CIPS         CIP 003-3.B.R4

NRC RG 5.71       C.5, App. B.2.11, App. C.3.4, App. C.3.10

## **2.9.3    *Information Handling***

### **2.9.3.1    *Requirement***

Organization implemented policies and procedures detailing the handling of information are developed and periodically reviewed and updated.

### **2.9.3.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Written policies and procedures detail access, sharing, copying, transmittal, distribution, and disposal or destruction of control system information. These policies or procedures include the periodic review of all information to ensure it is properly handled. The organization protects information against unauthorized access, misuse, or corruption during transportation or transmission. The organization distributes or shares information on a need-to-know basis and considers legal and regulatory requirements when developing these policies and procedures.

### **2.9.3.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.9.3.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-1, SI-12

API 1164r2         Annex A

NERC CIPS         CIP 002-3. B.R4.1

NRC RG 5.71       App. B.3.1, App. C.1.2

## **2.9.4    *Information Classification***

### **2.9.4.1    *Requirement***

All information is classified to indicate the protection required commensurate with its sensitivity and consequence.

#### **2.9.4.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

A minimum of three levels of classification should be defined for control system information to indicate the protection required commensurate with its sensitivity and consequence. These levels may be company proprietary, restricted, or public, indicating the need, priority, and level of protection required for that information. These information classification levels provide guidance for access and control to include sharing, copying, transmittal, and distribution appropriate for the level of protection required.

#### **2.9.4.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.9.4.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	RA-2
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	6, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3. B.R4.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.4

### **2.9.5    *Information Exchange***

#### **2.9.5.1    *Requirement***

Formal contractual and confidentiality agreements are established for the exchange of information and software between the organization and external parties.

#### **2.9.5.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

When it is necessary for the control system to communicate information to another organization or external party system, the operators need to mutually develop a formal contractual and confidentiality agreement and use a secure method of communication. These formal exchange policies, procedures, and security controls need to be in place to protect the exchange of information using all types of communication facilities.

#### **2.9.5.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

If a specific device needs to communicate with another device outside the control system network, communications need to be limited to only the devices that need to communicate. All other ports and routes need to be locked down or disabled.

#### **2.9.5.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SC-16
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3. B.R5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.12

### **2.9.6    *Information and Document Classification***

#### **2.9.6.1    *Requirement***

The organization develops policies and procedures to classify data, including establishing:

1. Retention policies and procedures for both electronic and paper media
2. Classification policies and methods (e.g., restricted, classified, general)

3. Access and control policies, to include sharing, copying, transmittal, and distribution appropriate for the level of protection required
4. Access to the data based on formally assigned roles and responsibilities for the control system.

#### **2.9.6.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

Companies use both comprehensive information and document management policies for their cybersecurity management system. Inherent in this is an information classification system that allows information assets to receive the appropriate level of protection. The organization defines information classification levels (e.g., restricted, classified, general) for access and control to include sharing, copying, transmittal, and distribution appropriate for the level of protection required. The organization also classifies all information (i.e., control system design information, network diagrams, process programs, vulnerability assessments) to indicate the need, priority, and level of protection required commensurate with its sensitivity and consequence.

#### **2.9.6.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

The organization periodically reviews information that requires special control or handling to determine whether such special handling is still required.

#### **2.9.6.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-1, AC-3, MP-1, MP-3
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	6, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3. B.R4.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.1, App. C.1.3

### **2.9.7    *Information and Document Retrieval***

#### **2.9.7.1    *Requirement***

The organization develops policies and procedures that provide details of the retrieval of written and electronic records, equipment, and other media for the control system in the overall information and document management policy.

#### **2.9.7.2    *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization employs appropriate measures to ensure long-term records information can be retrieved (i.e., converting the data to a newer format, retaining older equipment that can read the data). Any legal or regulatory requirements are considered when developing these policies and procedures. The organization takes special care to confirm the security, availability, and usability of the control system configuration, which includes the logic used in developing the configuration or programming for the life of the control system.

#### **2.9.7.3    *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.9.7.4    *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-1
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.1.2

## **2.9.8 Information and Document Destruction**

### **2.9.8.1 Requirement**

The organization develops policies and procedures detailing the destruction of written and electronic records, equipment, and other media for the control system, without compromising the confidentiality of the data.

### **2.9.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization develops policies and procedures detailing the destruction and disposal of written and electronic records, equipment, and other media in the overall information and document management policy. This also includes the method of disposal such as shredding of paper records, erasing of disks or other electronic media, or physical destruction. All legal or regulatory requirements need to be considered when developing these policies and procedures.

### **2.9.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.9.8.4 References**

API 1164r2      Annex A

NRC RG 5.71      App. C.1.2

## **2.9.9 Information and Document Management Review**

### **2.9.9.1 Requirement**

The organization performs periodic reviews of compliance with the control system information and document security management policy to ensure compliance with any laws and regulatory requirements.

### **2.9.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization periodically reviews compliance in the information and document management security policy. The compliance review procedure needs to consider all legal and regulatory documentation requirements applicable to the control system.

### **2.9.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.9.9.4 References**

API 1164r2      1.2, Annex A

NERC CIPS      CIP 003-3. D

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.2.3, App. C.1.2

## **2.9.10 Media Marking**

### **2.9.10.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Marks, in accordance with organizational policies and procedures, removable system media and system output indicating the distribution limitations, handling caveats and applicable security markings (if any) of the information
2. Exempts an organization-defined list of media types or hardware components from marking as long as the exempted items remain within the organization-defined protected environment (e.g., controlled areas).

### **2.9.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The term marking is distinguished from the term labeling. Marking is used in security controls when referring to information that is human-readable. The term labeling is used in the context of marking internal data structures within the system for access control purposes for information in process, in storage, or in transit. Removable system media include both digital media (e.g., magnetic tapes, external/removable hard drives, flash/thumb drives, CDs, DVDs, diskettes) and nondigital media (e.g., paper, microfilm). An organizational assessment of risk guides the selection of media requiring marking. The rigor with which this control is applied is commensurate with the FIPS 199 security categorization of the information contained on the media. For example, marking is not required for media containing information determined by the organization to be in the public domain or to be publicly releasable. Some organizations may require marking for public information indicating that the information is publicly releasable. Organizations may extend the scope of this control to include information system output devices containing organizational information including monitors and printers. Marking of removable media and information system output is consistent with applicable laws, Executive orders, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance.

### **2.9.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.9.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	MP-3
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.1.3

## **2.9.11 Security Attributes**

### **2.9.11.1 Requirement**

The control system supports and maintains the binding of user-defined security attributes to information in storage, in process, and in transmission in accordance with:

1. Access control requirements
2. Special dissemination, handling, or distribution instructions
3. Otherwise, as required by the system security policy.

### **2.9.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Security attributes are specified characteristics used on internal data structures to enable the implementation of access control, flow control, special dissemination, handling, or distribution instructions or to support other aspects of the information security policy. The term security label is often used to associate a set of security attributes with a specific information object as part of the data structure for that object (e.g., user access privileges, nationality, and contractor affiliation). Such labels are often used to implement access control and flow control policies.

### **2.9.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The information system dynamically reconfigures security attributes in accordance with an identified security policy as information is created and combined.
2. The information system allows authorized entities to change security attributes.

3. The information system maintains the binding of security attributes to information with sufficient assurance that the information attribute association can be used as the basis for automated policy actions.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—Examples of automated policy actions include automated access control decisions (e.g., mandatory Access Control decisions) or decisions to release/or not release information (e.g., information flows via cross domain systems).

4. The information system allows authorized users to associate security attributes with information

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—The support provided by the information system can vary from prompting users to select security attributes to be associated with specific information objects, to ensure that the combination of attributes selected is valid.

5. The information system displays security attributes in human-readable form on each object-output from the system-to-system output devices to identify special dissemination, handling, or distribution instructions.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—Objects output from the information system include pages, screens, or equivalent. Output devices include printers, video displays on computer terminals, monitors, screens on HMIs, notebooks/laptop computer, and personal digital assistants.

#### **2.9.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-16

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.1.3

## **2.10 System Development and Maintenance**

Security is most effective when it is designed into the control system and sustained, through effective maintenance, throughout the life cycle of the system and through all future configurations. Maintenance activities encompass appropriate policies and procedures for performing routine and preventive maintenance on the components of a control system. This includes the use of both local and remote maintenance tools and management of maintenance personnel.

### **2.10.1 System Maintenance Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.10.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, control system maintenance policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the control system maintenance policy and associated system maintenance controls.

#### **2.10.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the control system maintenance policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The control system maintenance policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. System maintenance procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

#### **2.10.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.10.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	MA-1
API 1164r2	3.6, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. A
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.2.4, C.4, App. C.4.1

#### **2.10.2 Legacy System Upgrades**

##### **2.10.2.1 Requirement**

The organization develops policies and procedures to upgrade existing legacy control systems to include security mitigating measures commensurate with the organization's risk tolerance and the risk to the system and processes controlled.

##### **2.10.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Legacy systems are those control systems currently in place for control of the organization's processes. In some cases, these systems were installed before a concern about system security existed, and hence, security mitigation measures were not included. The organization determines the current configuration of the control system and then provides system upgrades as required to meet the organization's security requirements.

##### **2.10.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.10.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SA-8
CAG	CC-7, CC-16
API 1164r2	Annex B.3.1.6.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.12.4

#### **2.10.3 System Monitoring and Evaluation**

##### **2.10.3.1 Requirement**

The organization conducts periodic security vulnerability assessments according to the risk management plan. The control system is then updated to address any identified vulnerabilities in accordance with organization's control system maintenance policy.

##### **2.10.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Control systems need to be monitored and evaluated according to the risk management plan periodically to identify vulnerabilities or conditions that might affect the security of a control system. The frequency of these evaluations needs to be based on the organization's risk mitigation policy. Changing security requirements and vulnerabilities necessitate a system review. These reviews need to be carefully planned and documented in accordance with the organization configuration management policy to identify any changes to the system. The organization maintains contact with other organizations that have similar systems to determine changing vulnerabilities.

##### **2.10.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.10.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-2
CAG	CC-17
API 1164r2	3.3, Annex B.2.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3. B.R6
NRC RG 5.71	C.4.1.2

#### **2.10.4 Backup and Recovery**

##### **2.10.4.1 Requirement**

The organization makes and secures backups of critical system software, applications, and data for use if the control system operating system software becomes corrupted or destroyed.

##### **2.10.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Control system operating software may be compromised due to an incident or disaster. A copy of the operating system software needs to be made, updated regularly, and stored in a secure environment so that it can be used to restore the control system to normal operations. In many instances, a backup control site can serve this purpose.

##### **2.10.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.10.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-6, CP-10
CAG	CC-13
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 009-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.1, App. C.9.1, App. C.9.5, App. C.9.6, App. C.9.7

#### **2.10.5 Unplanned System Maintenance**

##### **2.10.5.1 Requirement**

The organization reviews and follows security requirements for a control system before undertaking any unplanned maintenance activities of control system components (including field devices). Documentation includes the following:

1. The date and time of maintenance
2. The name of the individual(s) performing the maintenance
3. The name of the escort, if necessary
4. A description of the maintenance performed
5. A list of equipment removed or replaced (including identification numbers, if applicable).

##### **2.10.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Unplanned maintenance is required to support control system operation in the event of system/component malfunction or failure. Security requirements necessitate that all unplanned

maintenance activities use approved contingency plans and document all actions taken to restore operability to the system.

#### **2.10.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization documents the decision and justification should unplanned maintenance not be performed on a control system after the identification of a security vulnerability.

#### **2.10.5.4 References**

API 1164r2	3.4, 3.8, Annex A, Annex B.3.1
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.11, App. C.4.1

### **2.10.6 Periodic System Maintenance**

#### **2.10.6.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Schedules, performs, documents, and reviews records of maintenance and repairs on system components in accordance with manufacturer or vendor specifications and/or organizational requirements
2. Explicitly approves the removal of the system or system components from organizational facilities for offsite maintenance or repairs
3. Sanitizes the equipment to remove all information from associated media prior to removal from organizational facilities for offsite maintenance or repairs
4. Checks all potentially impacted security controls to verify that the controls are still functioning properly following maintenance or repair actions.

#### **2.10.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The control is intended to address the security aspects of the organization's system maintenance program. All maintenance activities to include routine, scheduled maintenance and repairs are controlled whether performed on site or remotely and whether the equipment is serviced on site or removed to another location. Maintenance procedures that require the physical removal of any control system component need to be documented, listing the date, time, reason for removal, estimated date of reinstallation, and name personnel removing components. These activities need to be approved by the appropriate organization officials. If the control system or component requires offsite repair, the organization removes all critical/sensitive information from associated media using approved procedures. After maintenance is performed on the control system, the organization checks the security features to ensure that they are still functioning properly.

#### **2.10.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization maintains maintenance records for the system that include (a) the date and time of maintenance; (b) name of the individual performing the maintenance; (c) name of escort, if necessary; (d) a description of the maintenance performed; and (e) a list of equipment removed or replaced (including identification numbers, if applicable).
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to schedule and document maintenance and repairs as required, producing up-to-date, accurate, complete, and available records of all maintenance and repair actions, needed, in process, and completed.

#### **2.10.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MA-2

## **2.10.7 Maintenance Tools**

### **2.10.7.1 Requirement**

The organization approves and monitors the use of system maintenance tools.

### **2.10.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The intent of this control is to address the security-related issues arising from the hardware and software brought into the system specifically for diagnostic and repair actions (e.g., a hardware or software packet sniffer that is introduced for the purpose of a particular maintenance activity). Hardware and software components that may support system maintenance, yet are a part of the system (e.g., the software implementing “ping,” “ls,” “ipconfig,” or the hardware and software implementing the monitoring port of an Ethernet switch), are not covered by this control.

### **2.10.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization inspects all maintenance tools carried into a facility by maintenance personnel for obvious improper modifications.
2. The organization checks all media containing diagnostic and test programs for malicious code before the media are used in the system.
3. The organization prevents the unauthorized removal of maintenance equipment by one of the following: (a) verifying that no organizational information is contained on the equipment, (b) sanitizing or destroying the equipment, (c) retaining the equipment within the facility, or (d) obtaining an exemption from a designated organization official explicitly authorizing removal of the equipment from the facility.
4. The organization employs automated mechanisms to restrict the use of maintenance tools to authorized personnel only.
5. Maintenance tools are used with care on control system networks to ensure that control system operations will not be degraded by their use.

### **2.10.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MA-3

API 1164r2      5.8, Annex B.4.11

NRC RG 5.71      App. C.4.2

## **2.10.8 Maintenance Personnel**

### **2.10.8.1 Requirement**

The organization documents authorization and approval policies and procedures and maintains a list of personnel authorized to perform maintenance on the control system. Only authorized and qualified organization or vendor personnel perform maintenance on the control system.

### **2.10.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Maintenance personnel need to have appropriate access authorization to the control system when maintenance activities allow access to organizational information that could result in a future compromise of availability, integrity, or confidentiality. When maintenance personnel do not have needed access authorizations, organizational personnel with appropriate access authorizations supervise maintenance personnel during the performance of maintenance activities on the control system.

### **2.10.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.10.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-5

API 1164r2 3.1, Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.22, App. C.4.3

## **2.10.9 Non-Local (Remote) Maintenance**

### **2.10.9.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Authorizes and monitors and controls remotely executed maintenance and diagnostic activities
2. Allows the use of remote maintenance and diagnostic tools only as consistent with organizational policy and documented in the security plan for the system
3. Maintains records for remote maintenance and diagnostic activities
4. Terminates all sessions and remote connections when remote maintenance is completed
5. Changes passwords following each remote maintenance session, if password-based authentication is used to accomplish remote maintenance.

### **2.10.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Individuals communicating through an external, nonorganization-controlled network (e.g., the Internet) conduct remote maintenance and diagnostic activities. Identification and authentication techniques used in remote maintenance and diagnostic sessions are consistent with Section 2.15.1, “Access Control Policy and Procedures.” Strong authentication and enforcement requirements are in other controls in Section 2.8, “System and Communications Protection”; Section 2.10, “System Development and Maintenance”; Section 2.14, “System and Information Integrity”; and Section 2.15, “Access Controls.”

### **2.10.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization audits remote maintenance and diagnostic sessions, and designated organizational personnel review the maintenance records of the remote sessions.
2. The organization documents the installation and use of remote maintenance and diagnostic links.
3. The organization:
  - a. Requires that remote maintenance or diagnostic services be performed from a system that implements a level of security at least as high as that implemented on the system being serviced or
  - b. Removes the component to be serviced from the system and prior to remote maintenance or diagnostic services, sanitizes the component (e.g., clearing of set points, embedded network addresses and embedded security validation information) before removal from organizational facilities. After the service is performed and the component is returned to the facility, the organization should check or reinstall the authorized firmware code as specified by the configuration management plan and reset all authorized embedded configuration settings. This should remove potentially malicious software that may have been added via “new” firmware. This should be done before reconnecting the component to the system.

4. The organization requires that remote maintenance sessions be protected by a strong authenticator tightly bound to the user.
5. The organization requires that
  - a. Maintenance personnel notify the system administrator when remote maintenance is planned (i.e., date/time)
  - b. A designated organizational official with specific security/system knowledge approves the remote maintenance.
6. The organization employs cryptographic mechanisms to protect the integrity and confidentiality of remote maintenance and diagnostic communications.
7. The organization employs remote disconnect verification at the termination of remote maintenance and diagnostic sessions.

#### **2.10.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MA-4  
 API 1164r2 5, 8.1, 8.2.4, Annex A  
 NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.22, App. B.3.11

### **2.10.10 Timely Maintenance**

#### **2.10.10.1 Requirement**

The organization obtains maintenance support and spare parts for organization-defined list of security-critical system components within organization-defined period of failure.

#### **2.10.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization specifies those system components that, when not operational, result in increased risk to organizations, individuals, or the nation because the security functionality intended by that component is not being provided. Security-critical components include firewalls, guards, gateways, intrusion detection systems, audit repositories, authentication servers, and intrusion prevention systems.

#### **2.10.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.10.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MA-6  
 API 1164r2 Annex A  
 NERC CIPS CIP 008-3 B.R8, CIP 009-3 B.R4  
 NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3.2.4, App. C.4.1

## **2.11 Security Awareness and Training**

Physical and cyber control system security awareness is a critical part of control system incident prevention, particularly with regard to social engineering threats. Social engineering is a technique used to manipulate individuals into giving away private information such as passwords. This information can then be used to compromise otherwise secure systems. Implementing a control system security program may change the way personnel access computer programs and applications, so organizations need to design effective training programs based on individuals' roles and responsibilities. Communication vehicles need to be developed to help employees understand why new access and control methods are required and how they can reduce risks and impacts to the organization. Training programs also need to

demonstrate management's commitment to cyber and control system security programs. Feedback from staff can be valuable for refining the security program.

Following are the controls for awareness and training that need to be supported and implemented by the organization to protect the control system.

## **2.11.1 Security Awareness and Training Policy and Procedures**

### **2.11.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, security awareness and training policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the security awareness and training policy and associated security awareness and training controls.

### **2.11.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the security awareness and training policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The security awareness and training policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. Security awareness and training procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

### **2.11.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.11.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AT-1

CAG CC-20

API 1164r2 1.2, 3.1, Annex A, Annex B

NERC CIPS CIP 004-3 A, B, C, D

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3.2.8, App. C.10.1, App. C.10.2, App. C.10.4, App. C.10.6

## **2.11.2 Security Awareness**

### **2.11.2.1 Requirement**

The organization provides basic security awareness training to all control system users (including managers, senior executives, and contractors) before authorizing access to the system, when required by system changes, and at least annually thereafter. The effectiveness of security awareness training, at the organization level, needs to be reviewed once a year at a minimum.

### **2.11.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization determines the content of security awareness training and security awareness techniques based on the specific requirements of the organization and the systems to which personnel have authorized access. Security awareness techniques can include displaying posters, offering security-messaged items, generating email advisories/notices from senior organizational officials, displaying logon screen messages, and conducting security awareness events. The security awareness training program is consistent with the requirements contained in CFR Part 5 Subpart C (5 CFR 930.301).

### **2.11.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. All control system design and procedure changes need to be reviewed by the organization for inclusion in the organization security awareness training.
2. The organization includes practical exercises in security awareness training that simulate actual cyber attacks.

### **2.11.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AT-2
CAG	CC-20
API 1164r2	1.2, 3.1, Annex A, Annex B
NERC CIPS	CIP 004-3 A, B.R1
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.10.1

## **2.11.3 Security Training**

### **2.11.3.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Defines and documents system security roles and responsibilities throughout the system development life cycle
2. Identifies individuals having system security roles and responsibilities
3. Provides security-related technical training: (a) before authorizing access to the system or performing assigned duties, (b) when required by system changes, and (c) on an organization-defined frequency, thereafter.

### **2.11.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization determines the content of security training based on assigned roles and responsibilities and the specific requirements of the organization and the systems to which personnel have authorized access. In addition, the organization provides system managers, system and network administrators, and other personnel having access to system-level software, security-related technical training to perform their assigned duties. The organization's security training program is consistent with the requirements contained in CFR Part 5 Subpart C (5 CFR 930.301).

### **2.11.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.11.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AT-3
CAG	CC-20
API 1164r2	1.2, 3.1, Annex A, Annex B
NERC CIPS	CIP 004-3 B.R2
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.2.8, App. C.10.2, App. C.10.4, App. C.10.6

## **2.11.4 Security Training Records**

### **2.11.4.1 Requirement**

The organization documents, maintains, and monitors individual control system security training activities, including basic security awareness training and specific information and control system security training in accordance with the organization's records retention policy.

### **2.11.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization maintains a record of training requirements for each user in accordance with the provisions of the organization training and records retention policy.

### **2.11.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.11.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AT-4
API 1164r2	3.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 004-3 B.R2.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.10.8

## **2.11.5 Contact with Security Groups and Associations**

### **2.11.5.1 Requirement**

The organization establishes and maintains contact with security groups and associations to stay up-to-date with the latest recommended security practices, techniques, and technologies and to share current security-related information including threats, vulnerabilities, and incidents.

### **2.11.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Security groups and associations can include special interest groups, specialized forums, professional associations, news groups, and/or peer groups of security professionals in similar organizations. The groups and associations selected are consistent with the organization's mission/business requirements. Information sharing activities regarding threats, vulnerabilities, and incidents related to systems are consistent with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance.

### **2.11.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.11.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AT-5
API 1164r2	3.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R1.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.10.9

## **2.11.6 Security Responsibility Testing**

### **2.11.6.1 Requirement**

The organization documents and tests the knowledge of personnel on security policies and procedures based on their roles and responsibilities to ensure that they understand their responsibilities in securing the control system.

### **2.11.6.2 *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization maintains a list of security responsibilities for each user. These need to be used to test each user in accordance with the provisions of the organization training policy. Users must be notified when their testing is scheduled, informed as to how it will be conducted, and notified of the results. The security responsibility testing needs to be conducted at least annually and/or as warranted by technology/procedural changes.

### **2.11.6.3 *Requirement Enhancements***

None

### **2.11.6.4 *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 MA-6

API 1164r2 3.5

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.6, App. C.12.5, App. C.12.6, App. C.13.1

## **2.12 Incident Response**

Incident response addresses the capability to continue or resume operations of a control system in the event of disruption of normal system operation. Incident response entails the preparation, testing, and maintenance of specific policies and procedures to enable the organization to recover the control system's operational status after the occurrence of a disruption. Disruptions can come from natural disasters, such as earthquakes, tornados, floods, or from manmade events like riots, terrorism, or vandalism. The ability for the control system to function after such an event is directly dependent on implementing policies, procedures, training, and resources in place ahead of time using the organizations planning process. The security controls recommended under the incident response family provide policies and procedures for incident response monitoring, handling, reporting, testing, training, recovery, and reconstitution of the control systems for an organization.

### **2.12.1 *Incident Response Policy and Procedures***

#### **2.12.1.1 *Requirement***

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, incident response policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the incident response policy and associated incident response controls.

#### **2.12.1.2 *Supplemental Guidance***

The organization ensures the incident response policy and procedures are consistent with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The incident response policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. Incident response procedures can be developed for the security program in general, and for a particular system, when required.

#### **2.12.1.3 *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.12.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IR-1
CAG	CC-18
API 1164r2	3.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.1

### **2.12.2 Continuity of Operations Plan**

#### **2.12.2.1 Requirement**

The organization develops and implements a continuity of operations plan dealing with the overall issue of maintaining or re-establishing production in case of an undesirable interruption for a control system. The plan addresses roles, responsibilities, assigned individuals with contact information, and activities associated with restoring system operations after a disruption or failure. Designated officials within the organization review and approve the continuity of operations plan.

#### **2.12.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A continuity of operations plan addresses both business continuity planning and recovery of control system operations. Development of a continuity of operations plan is a process to identify procedures for safe control system operation while recovering from a significant system disruption. The plan requires documentation of critical control system functions that need to be recovered.

#### **2.12.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The continuity of operations plan delineates that at the time of the disruption to normal system operations, the organization executes its incident response policies and procedures to place the system in a safe configuration and initiates the necessary notifications to regulatory authorities.
2. The organization initiates a root cause analysis for the event and submits any findings from the analysis to the organizations corrective action program.
3. The organization then resumes normal operation of the system in accordance with its policies and procedures.

#### **2.12.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-2
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R4.1, CIP 009-3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.9.2

### **2.12.3 Continuity of Operations Roles and Responsibilities**

#### **2.12.3.1 Requirement**

The organization's continuity of operations plan defines and communicates the specific roles and responsibilities for each part of the plan in relation to various types of control system incidents.

#### **2.12.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The continuity of operations plan defines the roles and responsibilities of the various employees and contractors in the event of a significant incident. The plans identify responsible personnel to lead the recovery and response effort if an incident occurs.

### **2.12.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.12.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-3
API 1164r2	3.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 009-3 B.R1.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.9.4

## **2.12.4 Incident Response Training**

### **2.12.4.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Trains personnel in their incident response roles and responsibilities with respect to the system
2. Provides refresher training on an organization-defined frequency, at least annually.

### **2.12.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Training needs to be provided to individuals in the control system community so that all users of the control system understand the content, purpose, and implementation of the plans. The organization provides continuity of operations training and refresher sessions annually.

### **2.12.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization incorporates control system simulated events into continuity of operations training to facilitate effective response by personnel in crisis situations.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to provide a thorough and realistic control system training environment.

### **2.12.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IR-2
CAG	CC-18
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex A, Annex B.5.1.2.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R1.6

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.8.2

## **2.12.5 Continuity of Operations Plan Testing**

### **2.12.5.1 Requirement**

The organization tests the continuity of operations plan to determine its effectiveness and documents the results. Appropriate officials within the organization review the documented test results and initiate corrective actions if necessary. The organization tests the continuity of operations plan for the control system at least annually, using organization prescribed tests and exercises to determine the plan's effectiveness and the organization's readiness to execute the plan.

### **2.12.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization maintains a list of incident response activities and mitigations for each user in accordance with the provisions of the organization incident response policy and procedures. Users need to be notified when their testing is scheduled and informed as to how it will be conducted. Several methods for testing and/or exercising continuity of operations plans exist for identifying potential weaknesses

(e.g., full-scale business continuity plan testing, functional/tabletop exercises). Following the preparation of the various plans, a schedule needs to be developed to review and test each plan and ensure that each still meets the objectives.

#### **2.12.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization coordinates continuity of operations plan testing and exercises with organizational elements responsible for related plans.
2. The organization tests and exercises the continuity of operations plan at the alternate processing site to familiarize control system operations personnel with the facility and available resources and to evaluate the site's capabilities to support continuity of operations.
3. The organization employs automated mechanisms to thoroughly and effectively test and exercise the continuity of operations plan by providing complete coverage of operational issues, selecting more realistic test/exercise scenarios and environments, and more effectively stressing the control system and supported missions.

#### **2.12.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-4, IR-3
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R1.6
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.9.3, App. C.9.7

### **2.12.6 Continuity of Operations Plan Update**

#### **2.12.6.1 Requirement**

The organization reviews the continuity of operations plan for the control system at least annually and updates the plan to address system, organizational, and technology changes or problems encountered during plan implementation, execution, or testing.

#### **2.12.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Organizational changes include changes in mission, functions, or business processes supported by the control system. The organization communicates the changes to appropriate organizational elements responsible for related plans.

#### **2.12.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.12.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-2
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.9.3, App. C.9.7

### **2.12.7 Incident Handling**

#### **2.12.7.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Implements an incident handling capability for security incidents that includes preparation, detection and analysis, containment, eradication, and recovery
2. Coordinates incident handling activities with contingency planning activities

3. Incorporates lessons learned from ongoing incident handling activities into incident response procedures and implements the procedures accordingly.

#### **2.12.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Incident-related information can be obtained from a variety of sources including, but not limited to, audit monitoring, network monitoring, physical access monitoring, and user/administrator reports. The organization incorporates the lessons learned from ongoing incident handling activities into the incident response procedures and implements the procedures accordingly. Incidents need to be analyzed in light of trends and recorded so they can be used for subsequent trend analyses.

#### **2.12.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs automated mechanisms to administer and support the incident handling process.

#### **2.12.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IR-4
CAG	CC-16, CC-18
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex A, Annex B.2.1.3.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R1.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.4

### **2.12.8 Incident Monitoring**

#### **2.12.8.1 Requirement**

The organization tracks and documents control system network security incidents on an ongoing basis.

#### **2.12.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Incident-related information can be obtained from a variety of sources including, but not limited to, audit monitoring, network monitoring, physical access monitoring, and user/administrator reports.

#### **2.12.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs automated mechanisms to assist in the tracking of security incidents and in the collection and analysis of incident information.

#### **2.12.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IR-5
CAG	CC-18
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex B.2.1.3.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R1.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.5

### **2.12.9 Incident Reporting**

#### **2.12.9.1 Requirement**

The organization promptly reports cyber and system security incident information to designated authorities.

### **2.12.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization develops guidance to determine what is a reportable incident and the granularity of the information reported (e.g., aggregation of common malicious activity) and who to report to (e.g., management, IT security, process safety, control systems engineering, law enforcement agencies). Reporting documents include the details of the incident, the lessons learned, and the course of action to prevent it from occurring again. The types of incident information reported, the content and timeliness of the reports, and the list of designated reporting authorities or organizations are consistent with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. In addition to incident information, weaknesses and vulnerabilities in the control system need to be reported to appropriate organizational officials in a timely manner to prevent security incidents. Each organization establishes reporting criteria, to include sharing information through appropriate channels. Current federal policy requires that organizational officials report security incidents to the United States Computer Emergency Readiness Team (US-CERT) at <http://www.us-cert.gov> within specified timeframes designated in the US-CERT Concept of Operations for Federal Cyber Security Incident Handling. The US-CERT phone number is 1-888-282-0870.

A sister organization, the Industrial Control System Computer Emergency Response Team (ICS-CERT) at [http://www.us-cert.gov/control\\_systems/ics-cert/](http://www.us-cert.gov/control_systems/ics-cert/) provides free assistance specifically for ICS issues. This is a manned 24-hour center designed to receive and transmit ICS Alerts, pertaining to potential adverse cyber effects (malware and 0-day infections). It is equipped with trained specialists to assist ICS users in determining whether they are experiencing a system upset or potential malware infection effects. The phone number for this watch floor is 1-877-776-7585.

### **2.12.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs automated mechanisms to assist in the reporting of security incidents. The Einstein network monitoring device from DHS is an example of an automated mechanism.

### **2.12.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IR-6
CAG	CC-18
API 1164r2	3.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R1.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.5

## **2.12.10 Incident Response Assistance**

### **2.12.10.1 Requirement**

The organization provides an incident response support resource that offers advice and assistance to users of the control system for the handling and reporting of security incidents.

### **2.12.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Possible implementations of incident response support resources in an organization include a help desk and/or an assistance group and access to forensics services when required. The incident response procedures allow for an effective response to any attack on the control system up to and including assigning qualified personnel to manipulate manually control system functions if necessary.

The ICS-CERT at [http://www.us-cert.gov/control\\_systems/ics-cert/](http://www.us-cert.gov/control_systems/ics-cert/) provides free assistance specifically for ICS issues. This is a manned 24-hour center designed to receive and transmit ICS Alerts, pertaining to potential adverse cyber effects (malware and 0-day infections). It is equipped with trained specialists to assist ICS users in determining whether they are experiencing a system upset or potential

malware infection effects. This assistance can be in the form of support for incident response and forensic analysis. The phone number for this watch floor is 1-877-776-7585.

#### **2.12.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to increase the availability of incident response-related information and support.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—Automated mechanisms can provide a push and/or pull capability for users to obtain incident response assistance. For example, individuals might have access to websites to query the assistance capability, or the assistance capability may have the ability to proactively send information to users (general distribution or targeted) as part of increasing understanding of current response capabilities and support.

2. The organization:

- a. Establishes a direct, cooperative relationship between its incident response capability and external providers of information system protection capability

Identifies organizational incident response team members to the external providers.

*Enhanced Supplemental Guidance*—External providers of information system protection capability include the Computer Network Defense program within the US Department of Defense. External providers help to protect, monitor, analyze, detect, and respond to unauthorized activity within organizational information systems and networks.

#### **2.12.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 IR-7

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.8.7

### **2.12.11 Incident Response Plan**

#### **2.12.11.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Develops an incident response plan that
  - a. Provides the organization with a roadmap for implementing its incident response capability
  - b. Describes the structure and organization of the incident response capability
  - c. Provides a high-level approach for how the incident response capability fits into the overall organization
  - d. Meets the unique requirements of the organization with respect to mission, function, size, and structure
  - e. Defines reportable incidents
  - f. Provides metrics for measuring the incident response capability within the organization
2. Distributes copies of the incident response plan to identified active incident response personnel
2. Reviews the incident response plan on a periodic frequency for relevance, changes to configuration and processes and the result of incident plan test exercises
3. Revises the incident response plan to address system/organizational/operational changes or problems encountered during plan implementation, execution, or testing
4. Communicates incident response plan changes to identified active incident response personnel.

### **2.12.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization should have a formal, focused, and coordinated approach to responding to incidents. The time to develop an incident response investigation and analysis plans, either internally or externally, is not during such incidents, but beforehand, where calm, calculated actions and responses can be developed and tested for effectiveness. These investigations should consider incidents based on the potential outcome as well as the actual outcome, recognizing that the cyber incident may include intentional and unintentional incidents. Immediate response that is not well thought-out has the potential to be more harmful than no alternative action.

### **2.12.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization develops, tests, deploys, and fully documents an incident response investigation and analysis process.
2. The program specifies roles and responsibilities with respect to local law enforcement and/or other critical stakeholders in an internal and shared incident response investigation and analysis program.

### **2.12.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IR-8
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.8

## **2.12.12 Corrective Action**

### **2.12.12.1 Requirement**

The organization includes processes and mechanisms in the planning to ensure that corrective actions identified as the result of a cybersecurity incident are fully implemented.

### **2.12.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization reviews investigation results and determines corrective actions needed to ensure that similar events do not happen again. The organization encourages and promotes cross-industry incident information exchange and cooperation to learn from the experiences of others.

### **2.12.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.12.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-4, IR-4
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 C, M1
NRC RG 5.71	C2, App. C.3.2, App. C.3.9, App. C.3.11, App. C.8.1, App. C.13.3

## **2.12.13 Alternate Storage Sites**

### **2.12.13.1 Requirement**

The organization identifies an alternate storage site and initiates necessary agreements to permit the storage of control system configuration information.

### **2.12.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The frequency of control system backups and the transfer rate of backup information to the alternate storage site (if so designated) are consistent with the organization's recovery time objectives and recovery point objectives.

### **2.12.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization identifies potential accessibility problems at the alternative storage site in the event of an areawide disruption or disaster and outlines explicit mitigation actions.
2. The organization identifies an alternate storage site that is geographically separated from the primary storage site so it is not susceptible to the same hazards.
3. The organization configures the alternate storage site to facilitate timely and effective recovery operations.

### **2.12.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-6
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A, Annex B.2.1.3.5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.22

## **2.12.14 Alternate Command/Control Methods**

### **2.12.14.1 Requirement**

The organization identifies alternate command/control methods for the control system and initiates necessary agreements to permit the resumption of operations for the safe operation of the control system within an organization-defined time period when the primary system capabilities are unavailable.

### **2.12.14.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Alternate command/control methods required to resume operations within the organization-defined time period are either available at alternate organization sites or contracts with vendors need to be in place to support alternate command/control methods for the control system. Timeframes to resume system operations need to be consistent with organization-established recovery time objectives.

### **2.12.14.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. Primary and alternate telecommunications service agreements contain priority-of-service provisions in accordance with the organization's availability requirements.
2. Alternate telecommunications services do not share a single point of failure with primary telecommunications services.
3. Alternate telecommunications service providers need to be sufficiently separated from primary service providers so they are not susceptible to the same hazards.
4. Primary and alternate telecommunications service providers need to have adequate contingency plans.

### **2.12.14.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-4, CP-8
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A, Annex B.2.1.3.5
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3, App. B.1.22, App. B.4.5

## **2.12.15 Alternate Control Center**

### **2.12.15.1 Requirement**

The organization identifies an alternate control center, necessary telecommunications, and initiates necessary agreements to permit the resumption of control system operations for critical functions within an organization-prescribed time period when the primary control center is unavailable.

### **2.12.15.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Equipment, telecommunications, and supplies required to resume operations within the organization-prescribed time period need to be available at the alternative control center or by a contract in place to support delivery to the site.

### **2.12.15.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization identifies an alternate control center that is geographically separated from the primary control center so it is not susceptible to the same hazards.
2. The organization identifies potential accessibility problems to the alternate control center in the event of an areawide disruption or disaster and outlines explicit mitigation actions.
3. The organization develops alternate control center agreements that contain priority-of-service provisions in accordance with the organization's availability requirements.
4. The organization fully configures the alternate control center and telecommunications so that they are ready to be used as the operational site supporting a minimum required operational capability.
5. The organization ensures that the alternate processing site provides information security measures equivalent to that of the primary site.

### **2.12.15.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CP-7

API 1164r2 3.4, Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 B.R1.2.1, CIP 002-3 R3

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.22

## **2.12.16 Control System Backup**

### **2.12.16.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Conducts backups of user-level information contained in the system on an organization-defined frequency
2. Conducts backups of system-level information (including system state information) contained in the system on an organization-defined frequency
3. Protects the confidentiality and integrity of backup information at the storage location.

### **2.12.16.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The frequency of system backups and the transfer rate of backup information to alternate storage sites (if so designated) are consistent with the recovery time and recovery point objectives for the organization. Digital signatures and cryptographic hashes are examples of mechanisms that can be employed by organizations to protect the integrity of system backups. Protecting backup information from unauthorized disclosure also is an important consideration depending on the type of information residing on the backup media and the FIPS 199 impact level. An organizational assessment of risk guides the use

of encryption for backup information. The protection of system backup information while in transit is beyond the scope of this control.

#### **2.12.16.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization tests backup information periodically to verify media reliability and information integrity.
2. The organization selectively uses backup information in the restoration of control system functions as part of contingency plan testing.
3. The organization stores backup copies of the operating system and other critical control system software in a separate facility or in a fire-rated container that is not collocated with the operational software.

#### **2.12.16.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-9
CAG	CC-19
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.1.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 008-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.8.1, App. C.9.5, App. C.9.6

### **2.12.17 Control System Recovery and Reconstitution**

#### **2.12.17.1 Requirement**

The organization provides the capability to recover and reconstitute the system to a known secure state after a disruption, compromise, or failure.

#### **2.12.17.2 Supplemental Guidance**

System recovery and reconstitution to a known secure state means that all system parameters (either default or organization-established) are set to secure values, security-critical patches are reinstalled, security-related configuration settings are reestablished, system documentation and operating procedures are available, application and system software is reinstalled and configured with secure settings, information from the most recent, known secure backups is loaded, and the system is fully tested. The recovery and reconstitution capability employed by the organization can be a combination of automated mechanisms and manual procedures.

#### **2.12.17.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization implements transaction recovery for systems that are transaction-based (e.g., database management systems).
2. The organization provides compensating security controls (including procedures or mechanisms) for the organization-defined circumstances that inhibit recovery to a known, secure state.
3. The organization provides the capability to re-image system components in accordance with organization defined restoration time periods from configuration controlled and integrity protected disk images representing a secure, operational state for the components.

#### **2.12.17.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CP-10
CAG	CC-19
API 1164r2	3.4, Annex A

NERC CIPS      CIP 009-3 B.R1 through R5

NRC RG 5.71      App. C.9.3, App. C.9.7

## **2.12.18 Fail-Safe Response**

### **2.12.18.1 Requirement**

The system has the ability to execute an appropriate fail-safe procedure upon the loss of communications with the system or the loss of the control system itself.

### **2.12.18.2 Supplemental Guidance**

In the event of a loss of communication between the system and the operational facilities, the onsite instrumentation needs to be capable of executing a procedure that provides the maximum protection to the controlled infrastructure. For the electric industry, this may be to alert the operator of the failure and then do nothing (e.g., let the electric grid continue to operate). For the chemical or manufacturing industry, the fail-safe process may be to alert the operator but then safely shut down the process. For the natural gas industry, this may be to maintain the last operational setting before communication failure. The organization defines what “loss of communications” means (i.e., 5 seconds or 5 minutes without communications). The organization then defines the appropriate fail-safe process for its industry.

### **2.12.18.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The system preserves the organization-defined system state information in failure.

### **2.12.18.4 References**

API 1164r2      8.1

## **2.13 Media Protection**

The security controls under the media protection family provide policy and procedures for limiting access to media to authorized users. Security measures also exist for labeling media for distribution and handling requirements as well as storage, transport, sanitization (removal of information from digital media), destruction, and disposal of the media.

Media assets include CDs; DVDs; erasable, programmable read-only memory; tapes; printed reports; and documents. Physical security controls need to address specific requirements for the safe maintenance of these assets and provide specific guidance for transporting, handling, and destroying these assets. Security requirements could include safe storage from fire, theft, unintentional distribution, or environmental damage. If an attacker gains access to unencrypted system backup media associated with a control system, it could provide valuable data for launching an attack. Recovering an authentication file from the backups might allow an attacker to run password-cracking tools and extract usable passwords. In addition, the backups typically contain machine names, Internet Protocol (IP) addresses, software version numbers, usernames, and other data useful in planning an attack. The use of any unauthorized CDs, DVDs, floppy disks, USB memory sticks, or similar removable media on any node that is part of, or connected to, the control system should not be allowed.

## **2.13.1 Media Protection Policy and Procedures**

### **2.13.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, media protection policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the media protection policy and associated media protection controls.

### **2.13.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The media protection policy and procedures need to be consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The media protection policy can be included as part of the general security policy for the organization. Media protection procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

### **2.13.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.13.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-1

API 1164r2 Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 003-3 B.R4, CIP 009-3 B.R5, CIP 007-3 B.R7

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.1

## **2.13.2 Media Access**

### **2.13.2.1 Requirement**

The organization ensures that only authorized users have access to information in printed form or on digital media, whether integral to or removed from the control system.

### **2.13.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization implements stringent access and authentication techniques for portable storage media to ensure the validity of connection. The security measures allow organizations to protect data files against unauthorized internal or semi-internal access.

System media include both digital media (e.g., diskettes, magnetic tapes, external/removable hard drives, flash/thumb drives, CDs, and DVDs) and nondigital media (e.g., paper, microfilm). This requirement also applies to portable and mobile computing and communications device with information storage capability (e.g., notebook computers, personal digital assistants, cellular telephones). An organizational assessment of risk guides the selection of media and associated information contained on that media requiring restricted access. Organizations document in policy and procedures the media requiring restricted access, individuals authorized to access the media, and the specific measures taken to restrict access.

### **2.13.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs automated mechanisms to ensure only authorized access to such storage areas and to audit access attempts and access granted. Note: This control enhancement is primarily applicable to designated media storage areas within an organization where a significant volume of media is stored and is not intended to apply to every location where some media are stored.

### **2.13.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-2

CAG CC-15

API 1164r2 Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 B.R7

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.1.2

### **2.13.3 Media Classification**

#### **2.13.3.1 Requirement**

The organization reviews and classifies all removable information storage media and the control system output to determine distribution limitations (public, confidential, or classified).

#### **2.13.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization reviews and classifies all removable information storage media using written and approved classification guides. The classification applied to the information storage indicates the level of sensitivity of the information contained on the media.

#### **2.13.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.13.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	MP-3
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	6, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R4.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.13, App. C.1.3

### **2.13.4 Media Marking**

#### **2.13.4.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Marks, in accordance with organizational policies and procedures, removable system media and system output indicating the distribution limitations, handling caveats, and applicable security markings (if any) of the information
2. Exempts an organization-defined list of media types or hardware components from marking as long as the exempted items remain within the organization-defined protected environment.

#### **2.13.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The term marking is distinguished from the term labeling. Marking is used in security controls when referring to information that is human-readable. The term labeling is used in the context of marking internal data structures within the system for access control purposes for information in process, in storage, or in transit. Removable system media include both digital media (e.g., magnetic tapes, external/removable hard drives, flash/thumb drives, CDs, DVDs, diskettes) and nondigital media (e.g., paper, microfilm). An organizational assessment of risk guides the selection of media requiring marking. The rigor with which this control is applied is commensurate with the FIPS 199 security categorization of the information contained on the media. For example, marking is not required for media containing information determined by the organization to be in the public domain or to be publicly releasable.

#### **2.13.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The system marks output on external media including video display devices, to identify any of the organization-identified set of special dissemination, handling, or distribution instructions that apply to system output using organization-identified human readable, standard naming conventions. Note: System markings refer to the markings employed on external media (e.g., video displays, hardcopy documents output from the system). External markings are distinguished from internal markings (i.e., the labels used

on internal data structures within the system). Video display devices include computer terminals, monitors, screens on notebook computers, and personal digital assistants.

#### **2.13.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	MP-3
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.13, App. C.1.3

### **2.13.5 Media Storage**

#### **2.13.5.1 Requirement**

The organization physically manages and securely stores control system media within protected areas. The sensitivity of the material delineates how the media are stored.

#### **2.13.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

System media include both digital media (e.g., diskettes, magnetic tapes, external/removable hard drives, flash/thumb drives, CDs, DVDs) and nondigital media (e.g., paper, microfilm). This control applies to mobile computing and communications devices with information storage capability (e.g., notebook computers, personal digital assistants, cellular telephones). Telephone systems are also considered systems and may have the capability to store information on internal media (e.g., on voicemail systems). Because telephone systems do not have, in most cases, the identification, authentication, and access control mechanisms typically employed in other systems, organizational personnel exercise extreme caution in the types of information stored on telephone voicemail systems. A controlled area is any space for which the organization has confidence that the physical and procedural protections provided are sufficient to meet the requirements established for protecting the information and system.

An organizational assessment of risk guides the selection of media and associated information contained on that media requiring physical protection. Organizations document in policy and procedures the media requiring physical protection and the specific measures taken to afford such protection. The rigor with which this control is applied is commensurate with the FIPS 199 security categorization of the information contained on the media. For example, fewer protection measures are needed for media containing information determined by the organization to be in the public domain, to be publicly releasable, or to have limited or no adverse impact on the organization or individuals if accessed by other than authorized personnel. In these situations, the physical access controls to the facility where the media reside provide adequate protection. The organization protects system media identified by the organization until the media are destroyed or sanitized using approved equipment, techniques, and procedures.

As part of a defense-in-depth protection strategy, the organization considers routinely encrypting information at rest on selected secondary storage devices. FIPS 199 security categorization guides the selection of appropriate candidates for secondary storage encryption. The organization implements effective cryptographic key management in support of secondary storage encryption and provides protections to maintain the availability of the information in the event of the loss of cryptographic keys by users.

#### **2.13.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.13.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	MP-4
CAG	CC-15

API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 009-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.1.4

## 2.13.6 Media Transport

### 2.13.6.1 Requirement

The organization:

1. Protects organization-defined types of digital and nondigital media during transport outside controlled areas using organization-defined security measures
2. Maintains accountability for system media during transport outside controlled areas
3. Restricts the activities associated with transport of such media to authorized personnel.

### 2.13.6.2 Supplemental Guidance

System media include both digital media (e.g., diskettes, tapes, removable hard drives, flash/thumb drives, CDs, DVDs) and nondigital media (e.g., paper, microfilm). This control also applies to mobile computing and communications devices with information storage capability (e.g., notebook computers, personal digital assistants, cellular telephones) that are transported outside controlled areas. Telephone systems also are considered systems and may have the capability to store information on internal media (e.g., on voicemail systems). Because telephone systems do not have, in most cases, the identification, authentication, and access control mechanisms typically employed in other systems, organizational personnel exercise caution in the types of information stored on telephone voicemail systems that are transported outside controlled areas. A controlled area is any space for which the organization has confidence that the physical and procedural protections provided are sufficient to meet the requirements established for protecting the information and system.

Physical and technical security measures for the protection of digital and nondigital media are approved by the organization, commensurate with the FIPS 199 security categorization of the information residing on the media, and consistent with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. Locked containers and cryptography are examples of security measures available to protect digital and nondigital media during transport. Cryptographic mechanisms can provide confidentiality and integrity protections depending on the mechanisms used. An organizational assessment of risk guides the selection of media and associated information contained on that media requiring protection during transport. Organizations document in policy and procedures the media requiring protection during transport and the specific measures taken to protect such transported media. The rigor with which this control is applied is commensurate with the FIPS 199 security categorization of the information contained on the media. An organizational assessment of risk also guides the selection and use of storage containers for transporting nondigital media. Authorized transport and courier personnel may include individuals from outside the organization (e.g., U.S. Postal Service or a commercial transport or delivery service).

### 2.13.6.3 Requirement Enhancements

1. The organization documents activities associated with the transport of system media using organization-defined system of records. Note: Organizations establish documentation requirements for activities associated with the transport of system media in accordance with the organizational assessment of risk.
2. The organization employs an identified custodian throughout the transport of system media. Note: Custodial responsibilities can be transferred from one individual to another as long as an unambiguous custodian is identified at all times.

3. In situations where the ICS cannot support cryptographic mechanisms, the organization employs compensating controls.

#### **2.13.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-5

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.1.5

### **2.13.7 Media Sanitization and Disposal**

#### **2.13.7.1 Requirement**

The organization sanitizes system digital and nondigital media, before disposal or release for reuse.

#### **2.13.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control applies to all media subject to disposal or reuse, whether or not considered removable. Sanitization is the process used to remove information from system media such that reasonable assurance exists, in proportion to the confidentiality of the information, that the information cannot be retrieved or reconstructed. Sanitization techniques, including clearing, purging, and destroying media information, prevent the disclosure of organizational information to unauthorized individuals when such media are reused or disposed of. The organization employs sanitization mechanisms with strength and integrity commensurate with the security category of the information. FIPS 199 provides standards and guidance on security categories of information and systems. The organization uses its discretion on the use of sanitization techniques and procedures for media containing information deemed to be in the public domain or publicly releasable, or deemed to have no adverse impact on the organization or individuals if released for reuse or disposed. The National Security Agency also provides media sanitization guidance and maintains a listing of approved sanitization products at [http://www.nsa.gov/ia/guidance/media\\_destruction\\_guidance/index.shtml](http://www.nsa.gov/ia/guidance/media_destruction_guidance/index.shtml).

#### **2.13.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization tracks, documents, and verifies media sanitization and disposal actions.
2. The organization periodically tests sanitization equipment and procedures to verify correct performance.

#### **2.13.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 MP-6

API 1164r2 Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 B.R7

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.1.6

## **2.14 System and Information Integrity**

Maintaining a control system, including information integrity, increases assurance that sensitive data have neither been modified nor deleted in an unauthorized or undetected manner. The security controls described under the system and information integrity family provide policy and procedure for identifying, reporting, and correcting control system flaws. Controls exist for malicious code detection, spam protection, and tools and techniques. Also provided are controls for receiving security alerts and advisories and the verification of security functions on the control system. In addition, controls within this family detect and protect against unauthorized changes to software and data; restrict data input and output; check the accuracy, completeness, and validity of data; and handle error conditions.

## **2.14.1 System and Information Integrity Policy and Procedures**

### **2.14.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. Formal, documented, system and control integrity policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the system and information integrity policy and associated system and information integrity controls.

### **2.14.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the system and information integrity policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The system and information integrity policy can be included as part of the general control security policy for the organization. System and information integrity procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

### **2.14.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.14.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SI-1

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 A, B, C, D

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.1

## **2.14.2 Flaw Remediation**

### **2.14.2.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Identifies, reports, and corrects system flaws
2. Tests software updates related to flaw remediation for effectiveness and potential side effects on organizational systems before installation
3. Incorporates flaw remediation into the organizational configuration management process as an emergency change.

### **2.14.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization identifies control systems containing software affected by recently announced flaws (and potential vulnerabilities resulting from those flaws). Proprietary software can be found either in commercial/government off-the-shelf component products or in custom-developed applications. The organization (or the software developer/vendor for software developed and maintained by a vendor/contractor) promptly evaluates newly released security-relevant patches, service packs, and hot fixes and tests them for effectiveness and potential impacts on the organization's control system before installation. Flaws discovered during security assessments, continual monitoring, or under incident response activities also need to be addressed expeditiously. It is generally not recommended to shut down and restart control system components when an anomaly is identified.

### **2.14.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization centrally manages the flaw remediation process and installs updates automatically. Organizations consider the risk of employing automated flaw remediation processes on a control system.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to determine periodically and on demand the state of system components with regard to flaw remediation.
3. The organization measures the time between flaw identification and flaw remediation, comparing with organization-defined benchmarks.
4. The organization employs automated patch management tools to facilitate flaw remediation to organization-defined system components.
5. The use of automated flaw remediation processes must not degrade the operational performance of the control system.

### **2.14.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-2
API 1164r2	3.7, 7.2, Annex B.3
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R1
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.2

## **2.14.3 Malicious Code Protection**

### **2.14.3.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Employs malicious code protection mechanisms at system entry and exit points and at workstations, servers, or mobile computing devices on the network to detect and eradicate malicious code:  
(a) transported by electronic mail, electronic mail attachments, web accesses, removable media, or other common means or (b) inserted through the exploitation of system vulnerabilities
2. Updates malicious code protection mechanisms (including signature definitions) whenever new releases are available in accordance with organizational configuration management policy and procedures
3. Configures malicious code protection mechanisms to: (a) perform periodic scans of the system on an organization-defined frequency and real-time scans of files from external sources as the files are downloaded, opened, or executed and (b) disinfect and quarantine infected files
4. Considers using malicious code protection software products from multiple vendors as part of defense-in-depth
5. Addresses the receipt of false positives during malicious code detection and eradication and the resulting potential impact on the availability of the system.

### **2.14.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization employs malicious code protection mechanisms at critical control system entry and exit points (e.g., firewalls, web servers, proxy servers, remote-access servers) and at workstations, servers, or mobile computing devices on the network. The organization uses the malicious code protection mechanisms to detect and eradicate malicious code (e.g., viruses, worms, Trojan horses, spyware). The organization updates malicious code protection mechanisms (including the latest virus definitions) whenever new releases are available in accordance with organizational configuration management policy

and procedures. The organization considers using malicious code protection software products from multiple vendors (e.g., using one vendor for boundary devices and servers and another vendor for workstations). The organization also considers the receipt of false positives during malicious code detection and eradication and the resulting potential impact on the availability of the control system.

Updates are scheduled to occur during planned control system outages. The organization considers control system vendor recommendations for malicious code protection. To reduce malicious code, organizations remove the functions and services that should not be employed on the control system (e.g., VoIP, Instant Messaging, file transfer protocol, HTTP, electronic mail, file sharing).

#### **2.14.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization centrally manages malicious code protection mechanisms.
2. The system automatically updates malicious code protection mechanisms (including signature definitions).
3. The system prevents users from circumventing host-based malicious code protection capabilities.
4. The system updates malicious code protection mechanisms only when directed by a privileged user.
5. The organization does not allow users to introduce removable media into the system.
6. The system implements malicious code protection mechanisms to identify data containing malicious code and responds accordingly (i.e., block, quarantine, send alert to administrator) when the system encounters data not explicitly allowed by the security policy.
7. The use of mechanisms to centrally manage malicious code protection must not degrade the operational performance of the system.

#### **2.14.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-3
CAG	CC-2, CC-4, CC-5, CC-7, CC-10, CC-12, CC-13, CC-15, CC-16, CC-17
API 1164r2	5.7, 5.8, 5.8, Annex B.3.1.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R4, R4.1, R4.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.16, App. B.1.20, App. B.3.11, App. B.5.2, App. C.3.3

### **2.14.4 System Monitoring Tools and Techniques**

#### **2.14.4.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Monitors events on the system
2. Detects system attacks
3. Identifies unauthorized use of the system
4. Deploys monitoring devices (a) strategically within the system to collect organization-determined essential information and (b) at ad hoc locations within the system to track specific types of transactions of interest to the organization
5. Heightens the level of system monitoring activity whenever an indication of increased risk exists to organizational operations and assets, individuals, other organizations, or the nation based on law enforcement information, intelligence information, or other credible sources of information
6. Consults legal counsel with regard to system monitoring activities.

#### **2.14.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Control system monitoring capability can be achieved through a variety of tools and techniques (e.g., intrusion detection systems, intrusion prevention systems, malicious code protection software, log monitoring software, network monitoring software, and network forensic analysis tools). It is paramount that the use of monitoring tools and techniques does not adversely impact the operation performance of the ICS. Monitoring devices can be strategically deployed within the control system (e.g., at selected perimeter locations and/or near server farms supporting critical applications) to collect essential information. Monitoring devices also can be deployed at ad hoc locations within the system to track specific transactions. In addition, these devices can be used to track the impact of security changes to the control system. The granularity of the information collected can be determined by the organization based on its monitoring objectives and the capability of the control system to support such activities. An example of a specific type of transaction of interest to the organization with regard to monitoring is HTTP traffic that bypasses organizational HTTP proxies, when use of such proxies is required. Organizations need to consult with appropriate legal counsel with regard to all system monitoring activities. The level of system monitoring activity is heightened by organizations whenever an indication of increased risk exists to organizational operations, organizational assets, or individuals based on law enforcement information, intelligence information, or other credible sources of information.

#### **2.14.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization interconnects and configures individual intrusion detection tools into a systemwide intrusion detection system using common protocols.
2. In situations where the ICS cannot support the use of automated tools to support near real-time analysis of events, the organization employs nonautomated mechanisms or procedures as compensating controls in accordance with the general tailoring guidance.
3. The organization employs automated tools to support near real-time analysis of events.
4. The organization employs automated tools to integrate intrusion detection tools into access control and flow control mechanisms for rapid response to attacks by enabling reconfiguration of these mechanisms in support of attack isolation and elimination.
5. The control system monitors inbound and outbound communications for unusual or unauthorized activities or conditions. Unusual/unauthorized activities or conditions include the presence of malicious code, the unauthorized export of information, or signaling to an external control system.
6. The control system provides a real-time alert when indications of compromise or potential compromise occur.
7. The system prevents users from circumventing host-based intrusion detection and prevention capabilities.
8. In situations where the ICS cannot prevent nonprivileged users from circumventing intrusion detection and prevention capabilities, the organization employs appropriate compensating controls (e.g., enhanced auditing) in accordance with the general tailoring guidance.
9. The system notifies a defined list of incident response personnel of suspicious events and takes a defined list of least disruptive actions to terminate suspicious events. Note: The least disruptive actions may include initiating request for human response.
10. The organization protects information obtained from intrusion monitoring tools from unauthorized access, modification, and deletion.
11. The organization tests/exercises intrusion monitoring tools on a defined time-period. Note: The frequency of tests/exercises is dependent on the type and method of deployment of the intrusion monitoring tools.

12. The organization makes provisions so that encrypted traffic is visible to system monitoring tools.  
Note: The enhancement recognizes the need to balance encrypting traffic versus the need to have insight into that traffic from a monitoring perspective. For some organizations, the need to ensure the confidentiality of traffic is paramount, for others the mission assurance concerns are greater.
13. The system analyzes outbound communications traffic at the external boundary of the system (i.e., system perimeter) and, as deemed necessary, at selected interior points within the system (e.g., subnets, subsystems) to discover anomalies. Note: Anomalies within the system include large file transfers, long-time persistent connections, unusual protocols and ports in use, and attempted communications with suspected malicious external addresses.
14. The use of monitoring tools and techniques must not adversely impact the operational performance of the control system.

#### **2.14.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-4
CAG	CC-5, CC-6, CC-14, CC-15
API 1164r2	3.5, Annex B.0, Annex B.3.1.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R4, R6
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.17, App. B.5.2, App. C.3.4

#### **2.14.5 Security Alerts and Advisories and Directives**

##### **2.14.5.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Receives system security alerts, advisories, and directives from designated external organizations on an ongoing basis
2. Generates internal security alerts, advisories, and directives as deemed necessary
3. Disseminates security alerts, advisories, and directives to an organization-defined list of personnel
4. Implements security directives in accordance with timeframes established by the directives, or notifies the issuing organization of the degree of noncompliance. Shutting down and restarting the ICS on the identification of an anomaly are not recommended because the event logs can be erased.

##### **2.14.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The US-CERT generates security alerts and advisories to maintain situational awareness across the federal government. Security directives are issued by designated organizations with the responsibility and authority to issue such directives. Compliance to security directives is essential because of the critical nature of many of these directives and the potential immediate adverse affects on organizational operations and assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation should the directives not be implemented in a timely manner. Preplanned segmentation and limited operational plans should be enacted to maximize operational availability if immediate untested compliance represents a greater detrimental threat to the ICS.

##### **2.14.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs automated mechanisms to make security alert and advisory information available throughout the organization as needed.

##### **2.14.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-5
------------------	------

API 1164r2	Annex B.5.1.1.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R4, R6
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.5

## 2.14.6 Security Functionality Verification

### 2.14.6.1 Requirement

The organization verifies the correct operation of security functions within the control system upon system startup and restart, upon command by user with appropriate privilege, periodically, and at defined time periods. The control system notifies the system administrator when anomalies are discovered.

### 2.14.6.2 Supplemental Guidance

The need to verify security functionality applies to all security functions. For security functions that are not able to execute automated self-tests, the organization either implements compensating security measures or explicitly accepts the risk of not performing the verification as required. Generally, the control system resources should not be shut down and restarted upon the identification of an anomaly.

### 2.14.6.3 Requirement Enhancements

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to provide notification of failed automated security tests.
2. The organization employs automated mechanisms to support management of distributed security testing.

### 2.14.6.4 References

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-6
API 1164r2	7.2, Annex B.4.1.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R4, R6
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.2, App. B.4.9

## 2.14.7 Software and Information Integrity

### 2.14.7.1 Requirement

The system monitors and detects unauthorized changes to software and information.

### 2.14.7.2 Supplemental Guidance

The organization employs integrity verification techniques on the system to look for evidence of information tampering, errors, and omissions. The organization employs good software engineering practices with regard to commercial-off-the-shelf integrity mechanisms (e.g., parity checks, cyclical redundancy checks, cryptographic hashes) and uses tools to monitor automatically the integrity of the IT systems, control systems, and the applications it hosts. The organization uses automated tools with extreme caution on designated high-availability systems.

### 2.14.7.3 Requirement Enhancements

1. The organization reassesses the integrity of software and information by performing on an organization-defined frequency integrity scans of the system and uses the scans with extreme caution on designated high-availability systems.
2. The organization employs automated tools that provide notification to designated individuals upon discovering discrepancies during integrity verification and uses automated tools with extreme caution on designated high-availability systems.

3. The organization employs centrally managed integrity verification tools and uses such tools with extreme caution on designated high-availability systems.
4. The organization requires use of tamper-evident packaging for organization-defined system components during transportation from vendor to operational site, during operation, or both.

#### **2.14.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-7
CAG	CC-3
API 1164r2	3.6, 7.2.2.2, Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.16, App. B.3.2

### **2.14.8 Spam Protection**

#### **2.14.8.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Employs spam protection mechanisms at system entry points and at workstations, servers, or mobile computing devices on the network to detect and take action on unsolicited messages transported by electronic mail, electronic mail attachments, web accesses, or other common means
2. Updates spam protection mechanisms (including signature definitions) when new releases are available in accordance with organizational configuration management policy and procedures
3. Considers using spam protection software products from multiple vendors as part of defense-in-depth.

#### **2.14.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization employs spam protection mechanisms at critical control system entry points (e.g., firewalls, electronic mail servers, remote-access servers) and at workstations, servers, and mobile computing devices on the network. The organization uses the spam protection mechanisms to detect and take appropriate action on unsolicited messages transported by electronic mail, electronic mail attachments, Internet access, or other common means. The organization considers using spam protection software products from multiple vendors (e.g., using one vendor for boundary devices and servers and another for workstations).

The organization removes unused and unnecessary functions and services (e.g., electronic mail, Internet access). Because of differing operational characteristics between control system and general IT systems, control systems do not generally employ spam protection mechanisms. Unusual traffic flow, such as during crisis situations, may be misinterpreted and caught as spam, which can cause issues with the system and possible failure of the system.

#### **2.14.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization centrally manages spam protection mechanisms. Organizations consider the risk of employing mechanisms to centrally manage spam protection on a control system. The use of mechanisms to centrally managed spam protection must not degrade the operational performance of the system.
2. The control system automatically updates spam protection mechanisms. Organizations consider the risk of employing mechanisms to centrally manage spam protection on designated high-availability systems. The use of mechanisms to centrally managed spam protection must not degrade the operational performance of the system.

#### **2.14.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-8
------------------	------

API 1164r2	7.2.2.1, 7.3.7
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.3

## **2.14.9 Information Input Restrictions**

### ***2.14.9.1 Requirement***

The organization implements security measures to restrict information input to the control system to authorized personnel only.

### ***2.14.9.2 Supplemental Guidance***

Restrictions on personnel authorized to input information to the control system may extend beyond the typical access requirements employed by the system and include limitations based on specific operational or project responsibilities.

### ***2.14.9.3 Requirement Enhancements***

None

### ***2.14.9.4 References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-9
API 1164r2	6.1, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R5
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.8

## **2.14.10 Information Input Validation**

### ***2.14.10.1 Requirement***

The control system checks the validity of information inputs by employing mechanisms to check for accuracy, completeness, validity, and authenticity.

### ***2.14.10.2 Supplemental Guidance***

Rules for checking accuracy, completeness, validity, and authenticity of information inputs should be accomplished as close to the point of origin as possible. Rules for checking the valid syntax and semantics of control system inputs (e.g., character set, length, numerical range, acceptable values) are in place to ensure that inputs match specified definitions for format and content. Inputs passed to interpreters are prescreened to ensure the content is not unintentionally interpreted as commands. The extent the control system is able to check the accuracy, completeness, validity, and authenticity of information is guided by organizational policy and operational requirements.

### ***2.14.10.3 Requirement Enhancements***

None

### ***2.14.10.4 References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	SI-10
CAG	CC-7
API 1164r2	5, 8.1, Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.3.6, App. C.3.8

## **2.14.11 Error Handling**

### **2.14.11.1 Requirement**

The system:

1. Identifies error conditions
2. Generates error messages that provide information necessary for corrective actions without revealing potentially harmful information that could be exploited by adversaries
3. Reveals error messages only to authorized personnel
4. Prohibits inclusion of sensitive information in error logs or associated administrative messages.

### **2.14.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The structure and content of error messages need to be carefully considered by the organization. Error messages generated by the control system need to provide timely and useful information without providing potentially harmful information that could be exploited by adversaries. System error messages are revealed only to authorized personnel (e.g., systems administrators, maintenance personnel). Sensitive information (e.g., account numbers, passwords, and personnel ID numbers) is not to be listed in error logs or associated administrative messages. The extent the control system is able to identify and handle error conditions is guided by organizational policy and operational requirements.

### **2.14.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.14.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SI-11

API 1164r2 7.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.9

## **2.14.12 Information Output Handling and Retention**

### **2.14.12.1 Requirement**

The organization handles and retains output from the control system in accordance with applicable laws, regulations, standards, and organizational policy as well as operational requirements of the control process.

### **2.14.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The National Archives and Records Administration provides guidance on records retention.

### **2.14.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.14.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SI-12

API 1164r2 3.1, 6, Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 005-3 B.R5 to R5.3

NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.10

## **2.14.13 Predictable Failure Prevention**

### **2.14.13.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Protects the system from harm by considering mean time to failure for an organization-defined list of system components in specific environments of operation
2. Provides substitute system components, when needed, and a mechanism to exchange active and standby roles of the components.

### **2.14.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Mean time to failure rates are defendable and based on considerations that are installation-specific, not industry average. The transfer of responsibilities between active and standby system components does not compromise safety, operational readiness, or security (e.g., state variables are preserved). The standby component is available at all times except where a failure recovery is in progress, or for maintenance reasons.

### **2.14.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization takes the system component out of service by transferring component responsibilities to a substitute component no later than an organization-defined fraction or percentage of mean time to failure.
2. The organization does not allow a process to execute without supervision for more than an organization-defined time period.
3. The organization manually initiates a transfer between active and standby system components at least once per a defined frequency if the mean time to failure exceeds the defined time period.
4. The organization, if a system component failure is detected, (a) ensures that the standby system component successfully and transparently assumes its role within a defined time period and (b) activates an alarm and/or automatically shuts down the system. Note: Automatic or manual transfer of roles to a standby unit may occur upon detection of a component failure.

### **2.14.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SI-13

API 1164r2 3.4, 6, Annex A, Annex B.3, Annex B.5

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.22, App. C.3.11, App. C.9.2

## **2.15 Access Control**

The focus of access control is ensuring that resources are only accessed by the appropriate personnel and that personnel are correctly identified. The first step in access control is creating access control lists with access privileges for personnel. The next step is to implement security mechanisms to enforce the access control lists. Mechanisms also need to be in place to monitor access activities for inappropriate activity. The access control lists need to be managed through adding, altering, and removing access rights as necessary.

Identification and authentication is the process of verifying the identity of a user, process, or device, as a prerequisite for granting access to resources in a control system. Identification could be a password, a token, or a fingerprint. Authentication is the challenge process to prove (validate) the identification provided. An example would be using a fingerprint (identification) to access a computer via a biometric device (authentication). The biometric device authenticates the identity of the fingerprint.

## **2.15.1 Access Control Policy and Procedures**

### **2.15.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, access control policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the access control policy and associated access controls.

### **2.15.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the access control policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The access control policy can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. Access control procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

### **2.15.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. Public access to ICS is not permitted.
2. Business IT and general corporation access to the ICS is not permitted.

### **2.15.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-1, SC-14
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	4, 5, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R5, CIP 005-3 B.R2
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.1.1, App. B.1.1

## **2.15.2 Identification and Authentication Policy and Procedures**

### **2.15.2.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, identification and authentication policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the identification and authentication policy and associated identification and authentication controls.

### **2.15.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the identification and authentication policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The identification and authentication policy can be included as part of the general security policy for the organization. Identification and authentication procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

### **2.15.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.15.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IA-1
------------------	------

API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R2.5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.4.1

### **2.15.3 Account Management**

#### **2.15.3.1 Requirement**

The organization manages system accounts, including:

1. Identifying account types (i.e., individual, group, and system)
2. Establishing conditions for group membership
3. Identifying authorized users of the system and specifying access rights and privileges
4. Requiring appropriate approvals for requests to establish accounts
5. Authorizing, establishing, activating, modifying, disabling, and removing accounts
6. Reviewing accounts on a defined frequency
7. Specifically authorizing and monitoring the use of guest/anonymous accounts
8. Notifying account managers when system users are terminated, transferred, or system usage or need-to-know/need-to-share changes
9. Granting access to the system based on a valid need-to-know or need-to-share that is determined by assigned official duties and satisfying all personnel security criteria and intended system usage.

#### **2.15.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The identification of authorized users of the system and the specification of access rights and privileges are consistent with the requirements in other security controls in the security plan.

#### **2.15.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to support the management of system accounts.
2. The system automatically terminates temporary and emergency accounts after a defined time period for each type of account.
3. The system automatically disables inactive accounts after a defined time period.
4. The system automatically audits account creation, modification, disabling, and termination actions and notifies, as required, appropriate individuals.
5. The organization reviews currently active system accounts on a defined frequency to verify that temporary accounts and accounts of terminated or transferred users have been deactivated in accordance with organizational policy.
6. The organization prohibits the use of system account identifiers as the identifiers for user electronic mail accounts.

#### **2.15.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-2
CAG	CC-9, CC-11
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R5

## **2.15.4 Identifier Management**

### **2.15.4.1 Requirement**

The organization manages system identifiers for users and devices by:

1. Receiving authorization from a designated organizational official to assign a user or device identifier
2. Selecting an identifier that uniquely identifies an individual or device
3. Assigning the user identifier to the intended party or the device identifier to the intended device
4. Archiving previous user or device identifiers.

### **2.15.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Common device identifiers include Media Access Control (MAC) or IP addresses, or device unique token identifiers. Management of user identifiers is not applicable to shared system accounts (e.g., guest and anonymous accounts). It is commonly the case that a user identifier is the name of a system account associated with an individual.

### **2.15.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.15.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 IA-4

API 1164r2      Annex A

NERC CIPS      CIP 005-3 B.R5

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.4.6

## **2.15.5 Authenticator Management**

### **2.15.5.1 Requirement**

The organization manages system authenticators for users and devices by:

1. Verifying, as part of the initial authenticator distribution for a user authenticator, the identity of the individual receiving the authenticator
2. Establishing initial authenticator content for organization-defined authenticators
3. Ensuring that authenticators have sufficient strength of mechanism for their intended use
4. Establishing and implementing administrative procedures for initial authenticator distribution, for lost/compromised, or damaged authenticators, and for revoking authenticators
5. Changing default content of authenticators upon system installation
6. Establishing minimum and maximum lifetime restrictions and reuse conditions for authenticators (if appropriate)
7. Changing or refreshing authenticators periodically, as appropriate for authenticator type
8. Protecting authenticator content from unauthorized disclosure and modification
9. Requiring users to take, and having devices implement, specific measures to safeguard authenticators.

### **2.15.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Device authenticators include, for example, certificates and passwords. User authenticators include tokens, PKI certificates, biometrics, passwords, and key cards. Initial authenticator content is the actual content (e.g., the initial password) as opposed to requirements about authenticator content (e.g., minimum password length). Many system components are shipped with factory default user authentication credentials to allow for initial installation and configuration. However, factory default authentication credentials are often well known, easily discoverable, present a significant security risk, and therefore, are changed upon installation.

The system supports user authenticator management requirements by enforcing organization-defined password minimum and maximum lifetime restrictions and password reuse restrictions for organization-defined number of generations. Measures to safeguard user authenticators includes maintaining possession of individual authenticators, not loaning or sharing authenticators with others, and reporting lost or compromised authenticators immediately.

### **2.15.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system, for PKI-based authentication:
  - a. Validates certificates by constructing a certification path with status information to an accepted trust anchor
  - b. Enforces authorized access to the corresponding private key
  - c. Maps the authenticated identity to the user account. Note: Status information for certification paths includes certificate revocation lists or online certificate status protocol responses.
2. The organization requires that the registration process to receive a user authenticator be carried out in person before a designated registration authority with authorization by a designated organizational official (e.g., a supervisor).
3. The organization employs automated tools to determine if authenticators are sufficiently strong to resist attacks intended to discover or otherwise compromise the authenticators.
4. The organization requires unique authenticators be provided by vendors and manufacturers of system components.

### **2.15.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IA-5
CAG	CC-4
API 1164r2	5, 5.5, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.4.7

## **2.15.6 Account Review**

### **2.15.6.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Reviews and analyzes system audit records on an organization-defined frequency for indications of inappropriate or unusual activity, and report findings to designated organizational officials
2. Adjusts the level of audit review, analysis, and reporting within the system when a change in risk exists to organizational operations, organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, or the nation based on law enforcement information, intelligence information, or other credible sources of information.

### **2.15.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization reviews audit records (e.g., user activity logs) for inappropriate activities in accordance with organizational procedures. The organization investigates any unusual control system-related activities and periodically reviews changes to access authorizations. The organization reviews the activities of users with significant roles and responsibilities for the control system more frequently. The extent of the audit record reviews is based on the impact level of the control system. For example, for low-impact systems, security logs are not intended to be reviewed frequently for every workstation but rather at central points, such as a web proxy or e-mail servers, and when specific circumstances warrant review of other audit records.

### **2.15.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system employs automated mechanisms to integrate audit review, analysis, and reporting into organizational processes for investigation and response to suspicious activities.
2. The organization analyzes and correlates audit records across different repositories to gain organization-wide situational awareness.
3. The system employs automated mechanisms to centralize audit review and analysis of audit records from multiple components within the system. Note: An example of an automated mechanism for centralized review and analysis is a Security Information Management product.
4. The organization integrates analysis of audit records with analysis of performance and network monitoring information to enhance further the ability to identify inappropriate or unusual activity.

### **2.15.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-2, AU-6
CAG	CC-6, CC-9, CC-11
API 1164r2	5, Annex A, Annex B.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.2, App. B.1.11, App. B.2.6

### **2.15.7 Access Enforcement**

#### **2.15.7.1 Requirement**

The control system enforces assigned authorizations for controlling logical access to the system in accordance with applicable policy.

#### **2.15.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Access control policies (e.g., identity-based policies, role-based policies, attribute-based policies) and associated access enforcement mechanisms (e.g., access control lists, access control matrixes, and cryptography) are employed by organizations to control access to the control system. The organization considers the implementation of a controlled, audited, and manual override of automated mechanisms in the event of emergencies or other serious events.

In addition to enforcing authorized access at the system level, access enforcement mechanisms are employed at the application level, when necessary, to provide increased security for the organization. Consideration is given to the implementation of an audited, manual override of automated mechanisms in the event of emergencies or other serious events. If encryption of stored information is employed as an access enforcement mechanism, the cryptography used is FIPS 140-2 (as amended) compliant.

### **2.15.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system enforces dual authorization, based on organizational policies and procedures for organization-defined privileged commands. Note: The organization does not employ dual authorization mechanisms when an immediate response is necessary to ensure public and environmental safety.
2. The system enforces one or more organization-defined nondiscretionary access control policies over organization-defined set of users and resources where the policy rule set for each policy specifies:
  - a. Access control information (i.e., attributes) employed by the policy rule set (e.g., position, nationality, age, project, time of day)
  - b. Required relationships among the access control information to permit access. Note: Nondiscretionary access control policies that may be implemented by organizations include, for example, Attribute-Based Access Control, and Originator Controlled Access Control.
3. The system prevents access to organization-defined security-relevant information except during secure, nonoperable system states. Note: Security relevant information is any information within the system that can potentially impact the operation of security functions in a manner that could result in failure to enforce the system security policy or maintain isolation of code and data. Secure, nonoperable system states are states in which the system is not performing mission/business-related processing (e.g., the system is offline for maintenance, troubleshooting, bootup, shutdown).

### **2.15.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-3
CAG	CC-9, CC-11
API 1164r2	5.10, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.3

## **2.15.8 Separation of Duties**

### **2.15.8.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Establishes division of responsibilities and separates duties of individuals as necessary to eliminate conflicts of interest
2. Implements separation of duties through assigned system access authorizations.

### **2.15.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Separation of duties prevents users from having the system access necessary to perform malevolent activity without collusion. Examples of separation of duties include (1) mission functions and distinct system support functions are divided among different individuals and roles; (2) different individuals perform system support functions (e.g., system management, systems programming, quality assurance/testing, configuration management, and network security); and (3) security personnel who administer access control functions do not administer audit functions.

In situations where the ICS cannot support the differentiation of roles, the organization employs appropriate compensating controls. The organization carefully considers the appropriateness of single individuals or single groups performing multiple critical roles.

### **2.15.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.15.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-5

API 1164r2 Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 B.R5.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.5

## **2.15.9 Least Privilege**

### **2.15.9.1 Requirement**

The organization employs the concept of least privilege, limiting authorized access for users (and processes acting on behalf of users), as necessary, to accomplish assigned tasks.

### **2.15.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization employs the concept of least privilege for specific duties and the control system (including specific ports, protocols, and services) in accordance with risk assessments as necessary to adequately mitigate risk to organizational operations, organizational assets, and individuals.

In situations where the ICS cannot support the differentiation of privileges, the organization employs appropriate compensating controls. The organization carefully considers the appropriateness of single individuals or single groups having multiple critical privileges.

### **2.15.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization explicitly authorizes access to organization-defined list of security functions (deployed in hardware, software, and firmware) and security-relevant information. Note: Explicitly authorized personnel include security administrators, system and network administrators, system security officers, system maintenance personnel, system programmers, and other privileged users.
2. The organization requires that users of system accounts with access to organization-defined list of security functions or security-relevant information, use nonprivileged accounts when accessing other system functions, and if feasible, audits any use of privileged accounts for such functions.
3. The organization authorizes network access to organization-defined privileged commands only for compelling operational needs and documents the rationale for such access in the security plan for the system.

### **2.15.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-6

CAG CC-8, CC-9

API 1164r2 Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 003-3 B.R5, R5.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.6, App. B.5.3

## **2.15.10 User Identification and Authentication**

### **2.15.10.1 Requirement**

The system uniquely identifies and authenticates organizational users (or processes acting on behalf of organizational users).

### **2.15.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Users are uniquely identified and authenticated for all accesses other than those accesses explicitly identified and documented by the organization. Authentication of user identities is accomplished by passwords, tokens, biometrics, or in the case of multifactor authentication, some combination thereof. Organizational users include employees and contractors. Access to organizational systems is defined as either local or network. Local access is any access to an organizational system by a user (or process acting on behalf of a user) where such access is obtained by direct connection without the use of a network. Network access is any access to an organizational system by a user (or process acting on behalf of a user) where such access is obtained across a network connection. Remote access is a type of network access which involves communication through an external, nonorganization-controlled network (e.g., the Internet). Organization-controlled networks include local area networks, wide area networks, and virtual private networks that are totally under the control of the organization. Identification and authentication requirements for system access by other than organizational users are described in other controls.

FIPS 201 specifies a PIV credential for use in the unique identification and authentication of federal employees and contractors. The identification and authentication requirements in this control are satisfied by complying with FIPS 201 as required by Homeland Security Presidential Directive (HSPD) 12. The selection of authentication mechanisms specified in FIPS 201 is constrained by whether access to the organizational system is local or network. FIPS 201 (Section 6.3.2) provides information on appropriate authentication mechanisms for local and network accesses to systems. In addition to identifying and authenticating users at the system level (i.e., at system logon), identification and authentication mechanisms are employed at the application level, when necessary, to provide increased security for the organization.

### **2.15.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system employs multifactor authentication for remote access and for access to privileged accounts.
2. The system employs multifactor authentication for network access and for access to privileged accounts.
3. The system employs multifactor authentication for local and network access.

### **2.15.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IA-2, IA-8
CAG	CC-4, CC-5
API 1164r2	5, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R5, R5.1, R5.1.1
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.4.2, App. B.4.6

## **2.15.11 Permitted Actions without Identification or Authentication**

### **2.15.11.1 Requirement**

The organization identifies and documents specific user actions, if any, that can be performed on the system without identification or authentication.

### **2.15.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization may allow limited user actions without identification and authentication (e.g., when individuals access public websites or other publicly accessible systems. Organizations should also identify any actions that normally require identification or authentication but may, under certain circumstances (e.g., emergencies), allow identification or authentication mechanisms to be bypassed.

Such bypass may be via a physical switch that is protected from accidental or unmonitored use. This control does not apply to situations where identification and authentication have already occurred and are not being repeated, but rather to situations where identification and authentication have not yet occurred.

#### **2.15.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization permits actions to be performed without identification and authentication only to the extent necessary to accomplish mission objectives.

#### **2.15.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-14

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.12

### **2.15.12 Device Identification and Authentication**

#### **2.15.12.1 Requirement**

The system uniquely identifies and authenticates an organization-defined list of devices before establishing a connection.

#### **2.15.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The devices requiring unique identification and authentication may be defined by type, by specific device, or by a combination of type and device as deemed appropriate by the organization. The system typically uses either shared known information (e.g., MAC or Transmission Control Protocol/IP [TCP/IP] addresses) or an organizational authentication solution (e.g., IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol [EAP] or a Radius server with EAP-Transport Layer Security authentication) to identify and authenticate devices on local and wide area networks. The required strength of the device authentication mechanism is determined by the security categorization of the system with higher impact levels requiring stronger authentication.

#### **2.15.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system authenticates devices before establishing remote network connections using bi-directional authentication between devices that are cryptographically based. Note: Remote network connection is any connection with a device communicating through an external, nonorganization-controlled network (e.g., the Internet).
2. The system authenticates devices before establishing network connections using bidirectional authentication between devices that are cryptographically based.

#### **2.15.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 IA-3

API 1164r2 8.1, Annex B.3.1.4.2

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.4.1, App. B.4.5

### **2.15.13 Authenticator Feedback**

#### **2.15.13.1 Requirement**

The authentication mechanisms in the control system obscure feedback of authentication information during the authentication process to protect the information from possible exploitation/use by unauthorized individuals.

### **2.15.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The control system obscures feedback of authentication information during the authentication process (e.g., displaying asterisks when a user types in a password). The feedback from the control system does not provide information that would allow an unauthorized user to compromise the authentication mechanism.

### **2.15.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.15.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IA-6
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R3.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.4.8

## **2.15.14 Cryptographic Module Authentication**

### **2.15.14.1 Requirement**

The control system employs authentication methods that meet the requirements of applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance for authentication to a cryptographic module.

### **2.15.14.2 Supplemental Guidance**

None

### **2.15.14.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Failure of cryptographic module authentication must not create a denial of service or adversely impact the operational performance of the control system.

### **2.15.14.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	IA-7
API 1164r2	8.2.2, Annex A, Annex B.23.1.6
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.4.9

## **2.15.15 Information Flow Enforcement**

### **2.15.15.1 Requirement**

The control system enforces assigned authorizations for controlling the flow of information within the system and between interconnected systems in accordance with applicable policy.

### **2.15.15.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Information flow control regulates where information is allowed to travel within a control system and between control systems (as opposed to who is allowed to access the information) and without explicit regard to subsequent accesses to that information. A few general examples of possible restrictions that are better expressed as flow control than access control are: keeping export controlled information from being transmitted in the clear to the Internet, blocking outside traffic that claims to be from within the organization and not passing any web requests to the Internet that are not from the internal web proxy. Information flow control policies and enforcement mechanisms are commonly employed by organizations to control the flow of information between designated sources and destinations (e.g., networks, individuals, devices) within control systems and between interconnected systems. Flow control is based on the characteristics of the information and/or the information path. Specific examples of flow control enforcement can be found in boundary protection devices (e.g., proxies, gateways, guards, encrypted tunnels, firewalls, and routers) that employ rule sets or establish configuration settings that restrict control system services or provide a packet-filtering capability.

### **2.15.15.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system enforces information flow control using explicit labels on information, source, and destination objects as a basis for flow control decisions. Note: Information flow enforcement mechanisms compare labels on all information (data content and data structure) and respond appropriately (e.g., block, quarantine, alert administrator) when the mechanisms encounter information flows not explicitly allowed by the information flow policy. Information flow enforcement using explicit labels can be used to control the release of certain types of information.
2. The system enforces information flow control using protected processing domains (e.g., domain type-enforcement) as a basis for flow control decisions.
3. The system enforces dynamic information flow control allowing or disallowing information flows based on changing conditions or operational considerations.
4. The system prevents encrypted data from bypassing content-checking mechanisms.
5. The system enforces organization-defined limitations on the embedding of data types within other data types.
6. The system enforces information flow control on metadata.
7. The system enforces organization-defined one-way flows using hardware mechanisms.
8. The system enforces information flow control using organization-defined security policy filters as a basis for flow control decisions.
9. The system enforces the use of human review for organization-defined security policy filters when the system is not capable of making an information flow control decision.
10. The system provides the capability for a privileged administrator to enable and disable organization-defined security policy filters.
11. The system provides the capability for a privileged administrator to configure the organization-defined security policy filters to support different security policies.

### **2.15.15.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-4
CAG	CC-4, CC-9, CC-15
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B.3.1.3, Annex B.3.1.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R5

## **2.15.16 Passwords**

### **2.15.16.1 Requirement**

The organization develops and enforces policies and procedures for control system users concerning the generation and use of passwords. These policies stipulate rules of complexity, based on the criticality level of the systems to be accessed.

### **2.15.16.2 Supplemental Guidance**

1. Default passwords of applications, operating systems, database management systems, or other programs must be changed immediately after installation.
2. The organization replaces default usernames whenever possible. Passwords need to be allocated, protected, and used based on the criticality level of the systems to be accessed.
3. The organization develops policies that stipulate the complexity (minimum/maximum length, combination of lower/upper case, numerals, special characters, etc.) level of the password for each criticality level. Short or easily guessed passwords are prohibited. Passwords can be a means of system protection when properly generated and used. Although passwords are not advisable in all control system applications, there are some cases where they are of benefit such as for remote access. These passwords are developed to meet defined metrics.
4. Good security practices need to be followed in the generation of passwords. Passwords should not easily be associated with the user or the organization and follow appropriate complexity rules. Initial or default passwords are changed immediately on first login. Following generation, passwords are not sent across any network unless protected by encryption or salted cryptographic hash specifically designed to prevent replay attacks.
5. Passwords need to be transferred to the user via secure media, and the recipient must be verified. The logon ID and password are never combined in the same communication.
6. The authority to keep and change high-level passwords is given to a trusted employee who is available during emergencies.
7. A log for master passwords needs to be maintained separately from the control system, possibly in a notebook in a vault or safe.
8. Passwords need to be changed regularly and expire when the user leaves the organization or after an extended period of inactivity.
9. Users are responsible for their passwords and are instructed not to share them or write them down, and need to be aware of their surroundings when entering passwords. If the operating system supports encryption, stored passwords are encrypted. Passwords are not to be embedded into tools, source code, scripts, aliases, or shortcuts.

### **2.15.16.3 Requirement Enhancements**

ICS deployment will require two-factor authentication or comparable compensating measures to ensure only approved authorized access is allowed. .

### **2.15.16.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 IA-5

CAG                  CC-4

API 1164r2        5.5, 8.1, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.4

NERC CIPS         CIP 005-3 B.R4.4

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.4.3, App. B.4.7

## **2.15.17 System Use Notification**

### **2.15.17.1 Requirement**

The system:

1. Displays an approved system use notification message or banner before granting access to the system that provides privacy and security notices consistent with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance and states that (a) users are accessing a private or government system; (b) system usage may be monitored, recorded, and subject to audit; (c) unauthorized use of the system is prohibited and subject to criminal and civil penalties; and (d) use of the system indicates consent to monitoring and recording
2. Retains the notification message or banner on the screen until users take explicit actions to log on to or further access, the system
3. For publicly accessible systems, (a) displays the system use information, when appropriate, before granting further access; (b) ensures that any references to monitoring, recording, or auditing are consistent with privacy accommodations for such systems that generally prohibit those activities; and (c) includes in the notice given to public users of the system, a description of the authorized uses of the system.

### **2.15.17.2 Supplemental Guidance**

System use notification messages can be implemented in the form of warning banners displayed when individuals log in to the system. System use notification is intended only for system access that includes an interactive interface with a human user and is not intended to call for such an interface when the interface does not currently exist.

### **2.15.17.3 Requirement Enhancement**

None

### **2.15.17.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-8

API 1164r2      Annex A

NERC CIPS      CIP 005-3 B.R3.2

NRC RG 5.71      App. B.1.8

## **2.15.18 Concurrent Session Control**

### **2.15.18.1 Requirement**

The organization limits the number of concurrent sessions for any user on the control system.

### **2.15.18.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization may define the maximum number of concurrent sessions for a system account globally, by account type, by account, or a combination. This control addresses concurrent sessions for a given system account and does not address concurrent sessions by a single user via multiple system accounts.

### **2.15.18.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.15.18.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-10

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.4.4

### **2.15.19 Previous Logon (Access) Notification**

#### **2.15.19.1 Requirement**

The control system notifies the user, upon successful logon (access), of the date and time of the last logon (access) and the number of unsuccessful logon attempts since the last successful logon.

#### **2.15.19.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control is intended to cover both traditional user logons to ICS systems as well as service-related processes that automatically log on to the ICS.

#### **2.15.19.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The information system is capable of notifying the user the number of successful logon and access attempts as well as unsuccessful logon and access attempts.
2. The information system is capable of displaying security-related changes to the user's account within an organizational-defined time period.

#### **2.15.19.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-9

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.9

### **2.15.20 Unsuccessful Login Attempts**

#### **2.15.20.1 Requirement**

The system:

1. Enforces a limit of an organization-defined number of consecutive invalid access attempts by a user during an organization-defined time period
2. Automatically locks the account/node for an organization-defined time period and delays the next login prompt according to an organization-defined delay algorithm when the maximum number of unsuccessful attempts is exceeded.

#### **2.15.20.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Because of the potential for denial of service, automatic lockouts initiated by the system are usually temporary and automatically release after a predetermined time period established by the organization. If a delay algorithm is selected, the organization may choose to employ different algorithms for different system components based on the capabilities of those components. Response to unsuccessful login attempts may be implemented at both the operating system and the application level. Permanent automatic lockouts initiated by a control system must be carefully considered before being used because of safety considerations and the potential for denial of service. Operator lockouts for critical and emergency control stations must maintain maximum control. In these cases, compensatory security requirements, such as limited physical access to trusted employees, are used.

#### **2.15.20.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The control system automatically locks the account/node until released by an administrator when the maximum number of unsuccessful attempts is exceeded.

#### **2.15.20.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-7  
API 1164r2 5.5  
NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.7

### **2.15.21 Session Lock**

#### **2.15.21.1 Requirement**

The system:

1. Prevents further access to the system by initiating a session lock after an organization-defined time period of inactivity or upon receiving a request from a user
2. Retains the session lock until the user re-establishes access using appropriate identification and authentication procedures.

#### **2.15.21.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A session lock is not a substitute for logging out of the system. Organization-defined time periods of inactivity comply with policy. In some situations, session-lock for ICS operator workstations/nodes is not advisable (e.g., when immediate operator responses are required for emergency situations). In situations where the ICS cannot support session lock, the organization employs appropriate compensating controls (e.g., providing increased physical security, personnel security, and auditing measures).

#### **2.15.21.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The system session lock mechanism, when activated on a device with a display screen, places a publicly viewable pattern onto the associated display, hiding what was previously visible on the screen.

#### **2.15.21.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-11  
API 1164r2 5.4  
NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.10, App. B.4.4

### **2.15.22 Remote Session Termination**

#### **2.15.22.1 Requirement**

The system terminates a network connection at the end of a session or after an organization-defined time period of inactivity.

#### **2.15.22.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control applies to both organization-controlled networks and nonorganization-controlled networks. The organization-defined time period of inactivity may, as the organization deems necessary, be a set of time periods by type of network access or for specific accesses in accordance with an organizational assessment of risk.

#### **2.15.22.3 Requirement Enhancements**

Automatic session termination applies to local and remote sessions. The control system terminates a network connection at the end of a session or after a period of inactivity per organization policy and procedures.

#### **2.15.22.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 SC-10

API 1164r2

5.4

NRC RG 5.71

App. B.3.11, App. B.4.4

## **2.15.23 Remote Access Policy and Procedures**

### ***2.15.23.1 Requirement***

The organization:

1. Documents allowed methods of remote access to the system
2. Establishes usage restrictions and implementation guidance for each allowed remote access method
3. Authorizes remote access to the system prior to connection
4. Enforces requirements for remote connections to the system.

### ***2.15.23.2 Supplemental Guidance***

Remote access is any access to an organizational system by a user (or process acting on behalf of a user) communicating through an external, nonorganization-controlled network (e.g., the Internet).

Examples of remote access methods include dial-up, broadband, and wireless. Virtual private network (VPN) when adequately provisioned may be treated as an organization-controlled network. With regard to wireless, radiated signals within organization-controlled facilities typically qualify as outside organizational control. Wireless technologies include, but are not limited to, microwave, satellite, packet radio (UHF/VHF), 802.11x, and Bluetooth. Remote access controls are applicable to systems other than public web servers or systems specifically designed for public access.

### ***2.15.23.3 Requirement Enhancements***

None

### ***2.15.23.4 References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-17

API 1164r2 8.2.4, Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 005-3 B.R2

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.3.11

## **2.15.24 Remote Access**

### ***2.15.24.1 Requirement***

The organization authorizes, monitors, and manages all methods of remote access to the control system.

### ***2.15.24.2 Supplemental Guidance***

The organization documents, monitors, and manages all methods of remote access (e.g., dialup, Internet, physical) to the control system. Appropriate authentication methods are needed to secure adequately remote access.

Remote access is any access to an organizational control system by a user (or a system) communicating through an external, nonorganization-controlled network (e.g., the Internet). Examples of remote access methods include dial-up, broadband, and wireless. Remote access security requirements are applicable to control systems other than public web servers or systems specifically designed for public access. The organization restricts access achieved through dial-up connections (e.g., limiting dial-up access based on source of request) or protects against unauthorized connections or subversion of authorized connections (e.g., using virtual private network technology).

Remote access to control system component locations (e.g., control center, field locations) is only enabled when necessary, approved, and authenticated. The organization considers multifactor authentication for remote user access to the control system.

#### **2.15.24.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs automated mechanisms to facilitate the monitoring and control of remote access methods.
2. The organization uses cryptography to protect the confidentiality and integrity of remote access sessions. Note: The encryption strength of mechanism is selected based on the FIPS 199 impact level of the information.
3. The system routes all remote accesses through a limited number of managed access control points.
4. The organization authorizes remote access for privileged commands and security-relevant information only for compelling operational needs and documents the rationale for such access in the security plan for the system.
5. The system protects wireless access to the system using authentication and encryption. Note: Authentication applies to user, device, or both as necessary.
6. The organization monitors for unauthorized remote connections to the system, including scanning for unauthorized wireless access points on an organization-defined frequency and takes appropriate action if an unauthorized connection is discovered. Note: Organizations proactively search for unauthorized remote connections including the conduct of thorough scans for unauthorized wireless access points. The scan is not necessarily limited to those areas within the facility containing the systems. Yet, the scan is conducted outside those areas only as needed to verify that unauthorized wireless access points are not connected to the system.
7. The organization disables, when not intended for use, wireless networking capabilities internally embedded within system components prior to issue.
8. The organization does not allow users to independently configure wireless networking capabilities.
9. The organization ensures that users protect information about remote access mechanisms from unauthorized use and disclosure.
10. The organization ensures that remote sessions for accessing an organization-defined list of security functions and security-relevant information employ additional security measures (organization-defined security measures) and are audited.
11. The organization disables peer-to-peer wireless networking capability within the system except for explicitly identified components in support of specific operational requirements.
12. The organization disables Bluetooth wireless networking capability within the system except for explicitly identified components in support of specific operational requirements.

#### **2.15.24.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-17
CAG	CC-5, CC-6, CC-8, CC-14
API 1164r2	8.1, 8.2.4, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R4.4
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.17, App. B.3.11, App. B.5.3

## **2.15.25 Access Control for Mobile Devices**

### **2.15.25.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Establishes usage restrictions and implementation guidance for organization-controlled mobile devices
2. Authorizes connection of mobile devices to organizational systems
3. Monitors for unauthorized connections of mobile devices to organizational systems
4. Enforces requirements for the connection of mobile devices to organizational systems
5. Disables system functionality that provides the capability for automatic execution of code on removable media without user direction
6. Issues specially configured mobile devices to individuals traveling to locations that the organization deems to be of significant risk in accordance with organizational policies and procedures
7. Applies specified measures to mobile devices returning from locations that the organization deems to be of significant risk in accordance with organizational policies and procedures.

### **2.15.25.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Mobile devices include portable storage media (e.g., USB memory sticks, external hard disk drives), portable computing, and communications devices with storage capability (e.g., notebook computers, personal digital assistants, cellular telephones). Usage restrictions and implementation guidance related to mobile devices can include configuration management, device identification and authentication, implementation of mandatory protective software (e.g., malicious code detection, firewall), scanning devices for malicious code, updating virus protection software, scanning for critical software updates and patches, conducting primary operating system (and possibly other resident software) integrity checks, and disabling unnecessary hardware (e.g., wireless, infrared). Examples of system functionality that provide the capability for automatic execution of code are AutoRun and AutoPlay.

Organizational policies and procedures for mobile devices used by individuals departing on and returning from travel include determining which locations are of concern, defining required configurations for the devices, ensuring that the devices are configured as intended before travel is initiated, and applying specific measures to the device after travel is completed. Specially configured mobile devices include computers with sanitized hard drives, limited applications, and additional hardening (e.g., more stringent configuration settings). Specified measures applied to mobile devices upon return from travel include examining the device for signs of physical tampering and purging/reimaging the hard disk drive. Protecting information residing on mobile devices is covered in the media protection family.

In situations where the ICS cannot implement any or all the components of this control, the organization employs other mechanisms or procedures as compensating controls. This may involve physically locking components; specific access logs; and specific monitoring programs for locks, keys, and access logs.

### **2.15.25.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization restricts the use of writable, removable media in organizational systems.
2. The organization prohibits the use of personally owned, removable media in organizational systems.
3. The organization prohibits the use of removable media in organizational systems when the media have no identifiable owner. Note: An identifiable owner for removable media helps reduce the risk of

employing such technology by assigning responsibility and accountability for addressing known vulnerabilities in the media (e.g., malicious code insertion).

#### **2.15.25.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-19
CAG	CC-6, CC-8
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.19

### **2.15.26 Wireless Access Restrictions**

#### **2.15.26.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Establishes use restrictions and implementation guidance for wireless technologies
2. Authorizes, monitors, and manages wireless access to the control system.

#### **2.15.26.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization uses authentication and cryptography or enhanced defense mechanisms to protect wireless access to the control system.

Wireless technologies include, but are not limited to, microwave, satellite, packet radio [UHF/VHF], 802.11x, and Bluetooth.

#### **2.15.26.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization uses authentication and encryption to protect wireless access to the control system. Any latency induced from the use of encryption must not degrade the operational performance of the control system.
2. The organization scans for unauthorized wireless access points at a specified frequency and takes appropriate action if such access points are discovered. Organizations conduct a thorough scan for unauthorized wireless access points in facilities containing high-impact control systems. The scan is not limited to only those areas within the facility containing the high-impact control systems.

#### **2.15.26.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-17
CAG	CC-4, CC-5, CC-6, CC-8, CC-14
API 1164r2	7.2.2.1, 7.3.8, Annex A, Annex B.1.1.1.1, Annex B.1.1.3, Annex B.3.1.4
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.17, App. B.3.11, App. B.5.4

### **2.15.27 Personally Owned Information**

#### **2.15.27.1 Requirement**

The organization restricts the use of personally owned information copied to the control system or control system user workstation that is used for official organization business. This includes the processing, storage, or transmission of organization business and critical control system information. The terms and conditions need to address, at a minimum:

1. The types of applications that can be accessed from personally owned IT, either remotely or from within the organization control system
2. The maximum security category of information that can be processed, stored, and transmitted
3. How other users of the personally owned control system will be prevented from accessing organization information
4. The use of VPN and firewall technologies
5. The use of and protection against the vulnerabilities of wireless technologies
6. The maintenance of adequate physical security mechanisms
7. The use of virus and spyware protection software
8. How often the security capabilities of installed software are to be updated (e.g., operating system and other software security patches, virus definitions, firewall version updates, malware definitions).

#### **2.15.27.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization establishes strict terms and conditions for the use of personally owned information on control systems and control systems user workstations.

#### **2.15.27.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.15.27.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-20

CAG CC-5

API 1164r2 Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.22

### **2.15.28 External Access Protections**

#### **2.15.28.1 Requirement**

The organization employs mechanisms in the design and implementation of a control system to restrict public access to the control system from the organization's enterprise network.

#### **2.15.28.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Public access is defined as access from the enterprise system. Care should be taken to ensure data shared with the enterprise system are protected for integrity of the information and applications. Public access to the control system to satisfy business requirements needs to be limited to read only access through the corporate enterprise systems via a demilitarized zone. The organization explicitly allows necessary network protocols in the demilitarized zone; blocks or filters unnecessary protocols, configure firewalls to block inbound connections, limits outbound connections to only those specifically required for operations and eliminates network connections that bypass perimeter protection mechanisms (e.g., firewall, VPN, demilitarized zone).

#### **2.15.28.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.15.28.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-20, IA-2

CAG	CC-4, CC-5
API 1164r2	7.3, 8, Annex B.3
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R1, R2, R3
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.18, App. B.1.22, App. B.3.11, App. B.4.6, App. B.5.4

## **2.15.29 Use of External Information Control Systems**

### **2.15.29.1 Requirement**

The organization establishes terms and conditions for authorized individuals to:

1. Access the system from an external system
2. Process, store, and transmit organization-controlled information using an external system.

### **2.15.29.2 Supplemental Guidance**

External systems are systems or components of systems that are outside the authorization boundary established by the organization and for which the organization typically has no direct supervision and authority over the application of required security controls or the assessment of security control effectiveness. External systems include, but are not limited to, (1) personally owned systems (e.g., computers, cellular telephones, or personal digital assistants), (2) privately owned computing and communications devices resident in commercial or public facilities (e.g., hotels, convention centers, or airports), (3) systems owned or controlled by nonfederal governmental organizations, and (4) private or federal systems that are not owned by, operated by, or under the direct supervision and authority of the organization.

Authorized individuals include organizational personnel, contractors, or any other individuals with authorized access to the organizational system. This control does not apply to the use of external systems to access public interfaces to organizational systems and information. The organization establishes terms and conditions for the use of external systems in accordance with organizational security policies and procedures. The terms and conditions address as a minimum (1) the types of applications that can be accessed on the organizational system from the external system and (2) the maximum FIPS 199 security category of information that can be processed, stored, and transmitted on the external system.

### **2.15.29.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization prohibits authorized individuals from using an external system to access the system or to process, store, or transmit organization-controlled information except in situations where the organization (a) can verify the implementation of required security controls on the external system as specified in the organization's security policy and security plan or (b) has approved system connection or processing agreements with the organizational entity hosting the external system.
2. The organization imposes restrictions on authorized individuals with regard to the use of organization-controlled removable media on external systems.

### **2.15.29.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AC-20
CAG	CC-4, CC-5, CC-13, CC-15, CC-16
API 1164r2	7.3, 8, Annex B.3, Annex B.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R1, R2, R3
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.1.20, App. B.3.11, App. B.5.4

## **2.15.30 User-Based Collaboration and Information Sharing**

### **2.15.30.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Facilitates information sharing by enabling specified authorized users to determine whether access authorization assigned to the end users match allowable access restrictions on information where limited discretion/information access is required
2. Employs automated or manual mechanisms as required to assist authorizing users in making the correct information sharing/collaboration decisions.

### **2.15.30.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control applies to information that may be restricted (e.g., privileged medical, business, proprietary, personally identifiable information, or special access programs/compartmentalization) based on administrative and/or legal determination. End users may be individuals, groups, or organizations, and the information may be defined by specific content, type, or security categorization.

### **2.15.30.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The information system employs automated mechanisms to enable authorized users to make information sharing decisions based on access authorizations of sharing partners and access restrictions on information to be shared.

### **2.15.30.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-21

API 1164r2 7.3

NERC CIPS CIP 008-3 B.R1.3

## **2.15.31 Publicly Accessible Content**

### **2.15.31.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Designates individuals authorized to post information onto an organizational information system that is publicly accessible
2. Trains authorized individuals to ensure that publicly accessible information does not contain nonpublic information
3. Reviews the proposed content of publicly accessible information for nonpublic information prior to posting onto the organizational information system
4. Reviews the content on the publicly accessible organizational information system for nonpublic information on a routine interval
5. Removes nonpublic information from publicly accessible information systems if discovered.

### **2.15.31.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Nonpublic information is any information for which the general public is not authorized access in accordance with federal laws, executive orders, directives, policies, regulations, standards, or guidance. Information protected under the Privacy Act and vendor proprietary information is examples of nonpublic information. This control addresses posting information on an organizational information system that is accessible to the general public typically without identification or authentication. The posting of information on nonorganizational information systems is covered by appropriate organizational policy.

### **2.15.31.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.15.31.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AC-22

API 1164r2 6

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.1.23

## **2.16 Audit and Accountability**

Periodic audits and logging of the control system need to be implemented to validate that the security mechanisms present during system validation testing are still installed and operating correctly. These security audits review and examine a system's records and activities to determine the adequacy of system security controls and to ensure compliance with established security policy and procedures. Audits also are used to detect breaches in security services through examination of system logs. Logging is necessary for anomaly detection as well as forensic analysis.

### **2.16.1 Audit and Accountability Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.16.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, audit and accountability policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the audit and accountability policy and associated audit and accountability controls.

#### **2.16.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the audit and accountability policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The audit and accountability policy can be included as part of the general security policy for the organization. Procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

#### **2.16.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.16.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AU-1

API 1164r2 1.2, Annex A, Annex B.4, Annex B.5

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, C and D

NRC RG 5.71 App. B.2.1

## **2.16.2 Auditable Events**

#### **2.16.2.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Determines, based on a risk assessment in conjunction with mission/business needs, which system-related events require auditing (e.g., an organization-defined list of auditable events and frequency of [or situation requiring] auditing for each identified auditable event)
2. Coordinates the security audit function with other organizational entities requiring audit-related information to enhance mutual support and to help guide the selection of auditable events
3. Ensures that auditable events are adequate to support after-the-fact investigations of security incidents
4. Adjusts, as necessary, the events to be audited within the system based on current threat information and ongoing assessments of risk.

#### **2.16.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The purpose of this control is for the organization to identify events that need to be auditable as significant and relevant to the security of the system. Audit records can be generated at various levels of abstraction, including at the packet level as information traverses the network. Selecting the right level of abstraction for audit record generation is a critical aspect of an audit capability and can facilitate the identification of root causes to problems. The checklists and configuration guides at <http://web.nvd.nist.gov/view/ncp/repository> provide recommended lists of auditable events.

#### **2.16.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization reviews and updates the list of organization-defined auditable events on an organization-defined frequency.
2. The organization includes execution of privileged functions in the list of events to be audited by the system.

#### **2.16.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-2, AU-12
CAG	CC-6, CC-8
API 1164r2	7.2, Annex B.2.1, Annex B.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R5.1.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.2, App. B.2.12

### **2.16.3 Content of Audit Records**

#### **2.16.3.1 Requirement**

The system produces audit records that contain sufficient information to establish what events occurred, when the events occurred, where the events occurred, the sources of the events, and the outcomes of the events.

#### **2.16.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Audit record content includes (1) date and time of the event, (2) the component of the system (e.g., software component, hardware component) where the event occurred, (3) type of event, (4) user/subject identity, and (5) the outcome (success or failure) of the event.

#### **2.16.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system provides the capability to include additional, more detailed information in the audit records for audit events identified by type, location, or subject.
2. The system provides the capability to centrally manage the content of audit records generated by individual components throughout the system.

#### **2.16.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-3, AU-12
CAG	CC-6
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R5
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.3, App. B.2.12

#### **2.16.4 Audit Storage Capacity**

##### **2.16.4.1 Requirement**

The organization allocates sufficient audit record storage capacity and configures auditing to reduce the likelihood of such capacity being exceeded.

##### **2.16.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization considers the types of auditing to be performed and the audit processing requirements when allocating audit storage capacity.

##### **2.16.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

##### **2.16.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-4
CAG	CC-6
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.4

#### **2.16.5 Response to Audit Processing Failures**

##### **2.16.5.1 Requirement**

The system:

1. Alerts designated organizational officials in the event of an audit processing failure
2. Takes the following additional actions: an organization-defined set of actions to be taken (e.g., shutdown system, overwrite oldest audit records, and stop generating audit records).

##### **2.16.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Audit processing failures include software/hardware errors, failures in the audit capturing mechanisms, and audit storage capacity being reached or exceeded.

##### **2.16.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system provides a warning when allocated audit record storage volume reaches an organization-defined percentage of maximum audit record storage capacity.
2. The system provides a real-time alert when the following audit failure events occur: an organization-defined audit failure event requiring real-time alerts.
3. The system enforces configurable traffic volume thresholds representing auditing capacity for network traffic and either rejects or delays network traffic above those thresholds.

##### **2.16.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AU-5

CAG	CC-6
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, C and D
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.5

## **2.16.6 Audit Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting**

### **2.16.6.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Reviews and analyzes system audit records on an organization-defined frequency for indications of inappropriate or unusual activity and reports findings to designated organizational officials
2. Adjusts the level of audit review, analysis, and reporting within the system when a change in risk exists to organizational operations, organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, or the nation based on law enforcement information, intelligence information, or other credible sources of information.

### **2.16.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Organizations increase the level of audit monitoring and analysis activity within the control system whenever an indication of increased risk exists to organizational operations, organizational assets, or individuals based on law enforcement information, intelligence information, or other credible sources of information. Audit records need to be monitored regularly for inappropriate activities in accordance with organizational procedures. Audit reports need to be provided to those responsible for cybersecurity.

### **2.16.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The system employs automated mechanisms to integrate audit review, analysis, and reporting into organizational processes for investigation and response to suspicious activities.
2. The organization analyzes and correlates audit records across different repositories to gain organization-wide situational awareness.
3. The system employs automated mechanisms to centralize audit review and analysis of audit records from multiple components within the system. Note: An example of an automated mechanism for centralized review and analysis is a Security Information Management product.
4. The organization integrates analysis of audit records with analysis of performance and network monitoring information to enhance further the ability to identify inappropriate or unusual activity.

### **2.16.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-6
CAG	CC-6
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B.3.1.2, Annex B.5.1.1.3
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, C and D
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.6

## **2.16.7 Audit Reduction and Report Generation**

### **2.16.7.1 Requirement**

The system provides an audit reduction and report generation capability.

### **2.16.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

An audit reduction, review, and reporting capability provides support for near real-time audit review, analysis, and reporting requirements and after-the-fact investigations of security incidents. Audit reduction and reporting tools do not alter original audit records.

In general, audit record processing is not performed on the control system.

#### **2.16.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The control system provides the capability to automatically process audit records for events of interest based on selectable event criteria.
2. Audit record processing must not degrade the operational performance of the control system.

#### **2.16.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-7, AU-12
CAG	CC-6
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R5.1.2
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.7, App. B.2.12

### **2.16.8 Time Stamps**

#### **2.16.8.1 Requirement**

The system uses internal system clocks to generate time stamps for audit records.

#### **2.16.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Time stamps generated by the system include both date and time.

#### **2.16.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The system synchronizes internal system clocks on an organization-defined frequency.

#### **2.16.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-8
CAG	CC-6
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R6, R6.3
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.8

### **2.16.9 Protection of Audit Information**

#### **2.16.9.1 Requirement**

The control system protects audit information and audit tools from unauthorized access, modification, and deletion.

#### **2.16.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Audit information includes all information (e.g., audit records, audit settings, and audit reports) needed to successfully audit control system activity. The logs are important for error correction, security breach recovery, investigations, and related efforts.

#### **2.16.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The system produces audit records on hardware-enforced, write-once media.

#### **2.16.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-9
CAG	CC-6
API 1164r2	Annex A

NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 D1.4
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.9

## **2.16.10 Audit Record Retention**

### **2.16.10.1 Requirement**

The organization retains audit logs for an organization-defined time period to provide support for after-the-fact investigations of security incidents and to meet regulatory and organizational information retention requirements.

### **2.16.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization retains audit records until it is determined that they are no longer needed for administrative, legal, audit, or other operational purposes. This includes retention and availability of audit records relative to subpoena and law enforcement actions. Standard categorizations of audit records relative to such types of actions and standard response processes for each type of action are developed and disseminated.

### **2.16.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.16.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-11
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 D1.4
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.11

## **2.16.11 Conduct and Frequency of Audits**

### **2.16.11.1 Requirement**

The organization conducts audits at planned intervals to determine whether the security objectives, measures, processes, and procedures:

1. Conform to the requirements and relevant legislation or regulations
2. Conform to the identified information security requirements
3. Are effectively implemented and maintained
4. Perform as expected
5. Identify inappropriate activities.

### **2.16.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Audits can be either in the form of internal self-assessment or independent, third-party audits. Internal audits, sometimes called first-party audits, are conducted by, or on behalf of, the organization itself for internal purposes. An internal audit needs to be conducted to ensure that documentation is current with any changes to the system. Independent audits review and examine records and activities to assess the adequacy of control system security measures, ensure compliance with established policies and operational procedures, and recommend necessary changes in security requirements, policies, or procedures. For independent audits, the auditors need to be accompanied by an appropriate knowledgeable control system staff person to answer any questions about the particular system under review.

### **2.16.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.16.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-1, CA-7
CAG	CC-17
API 1164r2	Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, C and D
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.1

## **2.16.12 Auditor Qualification**

### **2.16.12.1 Requirement**

The organization's audit program specifies auditor qualifications in accordance with the organization's documented training program.

### **2.16.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The selection of auditors and conduct of audits ensure the objectivity and impartiality of the audit process. Security auditors need to:

1. Understand the control system to be audited and be personally familiar with the systems and operating practices
2. Understand the risk involved with the audit and the consequences associated with unintentional stimulus or denial of service to the control system
3. Fully understand the corporate cyber and control system security policies and procedures and the specific health, safety, and environmental risks associated with a particular facility and process.

### **2.16.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization assigns auditor and system administration functions to separate personnel.

### **2.16.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-2
CAG	CC-17
API 1164r2	Annex A
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.2.8

## **2.16.13 Audit Tools**

### **2.16.13.1 Requirement**

The organization under the audit program specifies strict rules and careful use of audit tools when auditing control system functions.

### **2.16.13.2 Supplemental Guidance**

As a general practice, system audits determine compliance of the control system to the organization's security plan. For new control systems, system auditing utilities need to be incorporated into the design. Appropriate security audit practices for legacy systems require appropriate precautions be taken before assessing the system. For system audits to determine inappropriate activity, information custodians ensure that system monitoring tools are installed to log system activity and security events. Auditing and log management tools need to be used cautiously in maintaining and proving the integrity of the control

system from installation through the system life cycle. Access to control systems audit tools need to be protected to prevent any possible misuse or compromise.

#### **2.16.13.3 Requirement Enhancements**

If automated cybersecurity scanning tools are used on business networks, extra care needs to be taken to ensure that they do not scan the control system network by mistake. Many installed devices do not have much processing power or sophisticated error-handling routines, and scans can overload the device and effectively create a denial-of-service interruption that could lead to equipment damage, production loss, or health, safety, and environmental incidents.

#### **2.16.13.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-7
API 1164r2	Annex B.4.1.1
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.7, App. C.3.4

### **2.16.14 Security Policy Compliance**

#### **2.16.14.1 Requirement**

The organization demonstrates compliance to the organization's security policy through audits in accordance with the organization's audit program.

#### **2.16.14.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Periodic audits of the control system are implemented to demonstrate compliance to the organization's security policy. These audits:

1. Assess whether the defined cybersecurity policies and procedures, including those to identify security incidents, are being implemented and followed
2. Document and ensure compliance to organization policies and procedures
3. Identify security concerns, validate the system is free from security compromises, and provide information on the nature and extent of compromises should they occur
4. Validate change management procedures and ensure that they produce an audit trail of reviews and approvals of all changes
5. Verify that security mechanisms and management practices present during system validation are still in place and functioning
6. Ensure reliability and availability of the system to support safe operation
7. Continuously improve performance.

#### **2.16.14.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.16.14.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-1
API 1164r2	Annex A, Annex B.4.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3.3, C.3.3.2.2, App. C.2.1, App. C.5.1, App. C.7

## **2.16.15 Audit Generation**

### **2.16.15.1 Requirement**

The system:

1. Provides audit record generation capability for the auditable events
2. Provides audit record generation capability at the organization-defined system components
3. Allows authorized users to select which auditable events are to be audited by specific components of the system
4. Generates audit records for the selected list of auditable events.

### **2.16.15.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Audit records can be generated from various components within the system. This control defines the specific system components providing auditing capability. In situations where the ICS cannot support the use of automated mechanisms to generate audit records, the organization employs nonautomated mechanisms or procedures as compensating controls in accordance with the general tailoring guidance.

### **2.16.15.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The system provides the capability to compile audit records from multiple components within the system into a systemwide (logical or physical) audit trail that is time-correlated to within an organization-defined level of tolerance for relationship between time stamps of individual records in the audit trail. Note: This control does not require that audit records from every component that provides auditing capability within the system be included in the systemwide audit trail. The audit trail is time-correlated if the time stamp in the individual audit records can be reliably related to the time stamp in other audit records to achieve a time ordering of the records within the organization-defined tolerance. In situations where the ICS cannot support the use of automated mechanisms to generate audit records, the organization employs nonautomated mechanisms or procedures as compensating controls.

### **2.16.15.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-12
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D
NRC RG 5.71	App. B.2.12, App. C.3.4

## **2.16.16 Monitoring for Information Disclosure**

### **2.16.16.1 Requirement**

The organization monitors open source information for evidence of unauthorized release or disclosure of organizational information.

### **2.16.16.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Unauthorized sensitive protected information (proprietary, security, and configuration) can be discovered in the public domain by self searching public information sources for these types of information releases. This allows the owner to attempt to contain or remove identified sensitive information from such public sources.

### **2.16.16.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.16.16.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	AU-13
------------------	-------

NERC CIPS            CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D

## **2.16.17 Session Audit**

### **2.16.17.1 Requirement**

Where legally required, the system provides the capability to:

1. Capture and record and log all content related to a user session
2. Remotely view and hear all content related to an established user session in real time.

### **2.16.17.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Session auditing activities are developed, integrated, and used in consultation with legal counsel in accordance with applicable federal laws, executive orders, directives, policies, or regulations. Very specific critical infrastructure applications in multiple industrial sectors require control room or cockpit monitoring as a part of operational regulation.

### **2.16.17.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.16.17.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 AU-14

API 1164r2        Annex A

NERC CIPS        CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D

## **2.17 Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Policy**

Monitoring and reviewing the performance of an organization's cyber and control system security policy provides the organization the ability to evaluate the performance of its security program. Internal checking methods, such as compliance audits and incident investigations, allow the company to determine the effectiveness of the security program and whether it is operating according to expectations. Finally, through a continuous improvement process, the organization's senior leaders regularly review compliance information on the security program, developed through the audit and corrective action process, and any deviations from the goals, targets, and objectives set in the planning process. If deviations or nonconformance exists, it may be necessary to revisit the original assumptions and implement appropriate corrective actions.

## **2.17.1 Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Management Policy and Procedures**

### **2.17.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented, monitoring and reviewing control system security management policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the monitoring and reviewing control system security management policy and associated audit and accountability controls.

### **2.17.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the monitoring and reviewing of control system security management policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The monitoring and reviewing of control system security management policy can be included

as part of the general security policy for the organization. Procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required.

#### **2.17.1.3 *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.17.1.4 *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-1
CAG	CC-17
API 1164r2	1.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.3.4

### **2.17.2 Continuous Improvement**

#### **2.17.2.1 *Requirement***

The organization's security program implements continuous improvement practices to ensure that industry lessons learned and best practices are incorporated into control system security policies and procedures.

#### **2.17.2.2 *Supplemental Guidance***

None

#### **2.17.2.3 *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.17.2.4 *References***

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-2, CA-7
CAG	CC-17
API 1164r2	1.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D
NRC RG 5.71	C.4.1

### **2.17.3 Monitoring of Security Policy**

#### **2.17.3.1 *Requirement***

The organization includes a process for monitoring and reviewing the performance of its cybersecurity policy.

#### **2.17.3.2 *Supplemental Guidance***

Regular review of the control system security policy needs to be done to validate its effectiveness in implementing the organization's security program and objectives. Effectiveness is measured by the results of cybersecurity audits, incidents, suggestions, and feedback from the organizations corrective action program.

#### **2.17.3.3 *Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### **2.17.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CA-2, CA-7  
CAG CC-2, CC-3, CC-4  
API 1164r2 Annex B.4.1.2  
NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, D  
NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3.3.2, C.4.1, C.4.1.1, C.4.1.2, C.4.1.3

### **2.17.4 Best Practices**

#### **2.17.4.1 Requirement**

The organization incorporates industry best practices into the organization's security program for control systems.

#### **2.17.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Best practices include, but are not be limited to:

1. Industry events that identify failed and successful cybersecurity breaches
2. Actions to be taken to resolve a breach of cybersecurity that are defined in light of the
  - a. Business priorities
  - b. Processes employed to collect metrics (e.g., audits, incidents) that help verify that the cybersecurity activities (manual or automated) are performing as expected
  - c. Process that will trigger a review of the level of residual risk and acceptable risk taking when changes exist to the organization, technology, business objectives, and processes
  - d. External events including identified threats and changes in social climate
  - e. Operational data analyzed, recorded, and reported to assess the effectiveness or performance of the cybersecurity management system.

#### **2.17.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.17.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CA-7  
CAG CC-17  
API 1164r2 1.2  
NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3  
NRC RG 5.71 App. C.3.5

### **2.17.5 Security Accreditation**

#### **2.17.5.1 Requirement**

The organization authorizes (i.e., accredits) the control system for processing before operations and periodically updates the authorization based on organization-defined frequency or when a significant change occurs to the system. A senior organizational official signs and approves the security accreditation.

### **2.17.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization assesses the security mechanisms employed within the control systems before and in support of the security accreditation. Security assessments conducted in support of security accreditations are called security certifications and need to be reviewed annually.

### **2.17.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.17.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CA-6

API 1164r2 3.6, Annex A

NRC RG 5.71 C.3.3

## **2.17.6 Security Certification**

### **2.17.6.1 Requirement**

The organization assesses the security mechanisms in the control system to determine the extent the security measures are implemented correctly, operating as intended, and producing the desired outcome with respect to meeting the security requirements for the system.

### **2.17.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Assessments are performed and documented by qualified assessors as authorized by the organization. External audits are outside the scope of this requirement. Ensure that the assessments do not interfere with control system functions. Care must be taken to ensure that the assessments do not interfere with control system functions. The assessor fully understands the corporate cyber and control system security policies and procedures and the specific health, safety, and environmental risks associated with a particular facility and/or process. A control system may need to be taken offline, to the extent feasible, before the assessments can be conducted. If a control system must be taken offline for assessments, assessments are scheduled to occur during planned control system outages whenever possible.

### **2.17.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs an independent certification agent or certification team to assess the security mechanisms in the control system.
2. An independent certification agent or certification team is any individual or group capable of conducting an impartial assessment of an organizational control system. Impartiality implies that the assessors are free from any perceived or actual conflicts of interest with respect to the developmental, operational, and/or management chain of command associated with the control system or to the determination of security control effectiveness. Independent security certification services can be obtained from other elements within the organization or can be contracted to a public or private sector entity outside the organization.
3. Contracted certification services are considered independent if the control system owner is not directly involved in the contracting process or cannot unduly influence the independence of the certification agent or certification team conducting the assessment of the security mechanisms in the control system.
4. The authorizing official decides on the required level of certifier independence based on the criticality and sensitivity of the control system and the ultimate risk to organizational operations and organizational assets and to individuals. The authorizing official determines if the level of certifier independence is sufficient to provide confidence that the assessment results produced are sound and can be used to make a credible, risk-based decision.

4. In special situations, for example when the organization that owns the control system is small or the organizational structure requires that the assessment of the security mechanisms be accomplished by individuals that are in the developmental, operational, and/or management chain of the system owner or authorizing official, independence in the certification process can be achieved by ensuring the assessment results are carefully reviewed and analyzed by an independent team of experts to validate the completeness, consistency, and veracity of the results.
5. The authorizing official should consult with representatives of the appropriate regulatory bodies, the senior agency information security officer, and the chief information officer to fully discuss the implications of any decisions on certifier independence in the types of special circumstances described above.

#### **2.17.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CA-4

API 1164r2 3.7

## **2.18 Risk Management and Assessment**

Risk management planning is a key aspect of ensuring that the processes and technical means of securing control systems have fully addressed the risks and vulnerabilities in the system.

An organization identifies and classifies risks to develop appropriate security measures. Risk identification and classification involves security assessments of control system and interconnections to identify critical components and any areas weak in security. The risk identification and classification process is continually performed to monitor the control system's compliance status. A documented plan is developed on how the organization will strive to stay in compliance within acceptable risk.

A comprehensive organization risk assessment process is implemented and periodically executed. Assets are categorized into security levels based on the level of security necessary for each asset to be sufficiently protected. Risk is assessed across the organization by determining the likelihood of potential threats and cost if the threat is realized. Control system vulnerabilities need to be recognized and documented.

### **2.18.1 Risk Assessment Policy and Procedures**

#### **2.18.1.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. A formal, documented risk assessment policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the risk assessment policy and associated risk assessment controls.

#### **2.18.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the risk assessment policy and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The risk assessment policy also takes into account the organization's risk tolerance level. The risk assessment policy can be included as part of the general security policy for the organization. Risk assessment procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system, when required.

#### **2.18.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.18.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	RA-1
API 1164r2	3.3, Annex B.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 B.R1, R1.2
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3

### **2.18.2 Risk Management Plan**

#### **2.18.2.1 Requirement**

The organization develops a risk management plan. A senior organization official reviews and approves the risk management plan.

#### **2.18.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

None

#### **2.18.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.18.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-1, RA-1, PM-9
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	3.3, Annex B.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 B.R1, R1.2
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3, C.3.3.3, C.3.3.3.2, App. C.13

### **2.18.3 Certification, Accreditation, and Security Assessment Policies and Procedures**

#### **2.18.3.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and periodically reviews and updates:

1. Formal, documented, security assessment and certification and accreditation policies that address purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance
2. Formal, documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the security assessment and certification and accreditation policies and associated assessment, certification, and accreditation controls.

#### **2.18.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization ensures the security assessment and certification and accreditation policies and procedures are consistent with applicable federal laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. The certification, accreditation, and security assessment policies can be included as part of the general information security policy for the organization. Certification, accreditation, and security assessment procedures can be developed for the security program in general and for a particular control system when required. The organization defines what constitutes a significant change to the control system to achieve consistent security reaccreditations.

#### **2.18.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.18.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-1, PM-9
API 1164r2	3.3, Annex B.2
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3, C.3.3.3, C.3.3.3.2, App. C.13

### **2.18.4 Security Assessments**

#### **2.18.4.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Assesses the security controls in the system on an organization-defined frequency, at least annually, to determine the extent the controls are implemented correctly, operating as intended, and producing the desired outcome with respect to meeting the security requirements for the system
2. Produces a security assessment report that documents the results of the assessment.

#### **2.18.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization assesses the security controls in a system as part of (1) security authorization or reauthorization, (2) meeting the requirement for annual assessments, (3) continuous monitoring, and (4) testing/evaluation of the system as part of the system development life-cycle process. The requirement for (at least) annual security control assessments should not be interpreted by organizations as adding assessment requirements to those requirements already in place in the security authorization process. To satisfy the annual assessment requirement, organizations can draw on the security control assessment results from any of the following sources, including but not limited to, (1) security assessments conducted as part of a system authorization or reauthorization process, (2) continuous monitoring, or (3) testing and evaluation of the system as part of the ongoing system development life-cycle process (provided that the testing and evaluation results are current and relevant to the determination of security control effectiveness). Existing security assessment results are reused to the extent that they are still valid and are supplemented with additional assessments as needed.

Subsequent to the initial authorization of the system and in accordance with policy, the organization assesses a subset of the controls annually during continuous monitoring. The selection of an appropriate subset of security controls for the system is based on (1) the security categorization of the system, (2) the specific security controls selected and employed by the organization, and (3) the level of assurance that the organization must have in determining the effectiveness of the security controls. The organization establishes the selection criteria and subsequently selects a subset of the security controls employed within the system for assessment. Those security controls that are volatile or critical to protecting the system are assessed at least annually. All other controls are assessed at least once during the system's 3-year authorization cycle. The organization can use the current year's assessment results from any of the above sources to meet the annual assessment requirement provided that the results are current, valid, and relevant to determining security control effectiveness.

#### **2.18.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs an independent assessor or assessment team to conduct an assessment of the security controls in the system.
2. The organization includes as part of security control assessments, periodic, unannounced, in-depth monitoring, penetration testing, and red team exercises.

#### **2.18.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-2
CAG	CC-17

API 1164r2	Annex B.4.1.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R4, R4.3, CIP 005-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3, C.3.3.3, C.3.3.3.2, App. C.13

## 2.18.5 Control System Connections

### 2.18.5.1 Requirement

The organization:

1. Authorizes all connections from the system to other systems outside the authorization boundary through the use of system connection agreements
2. Documents the system connections and associated security requirements for each connection
3. Monitors the system connections on an ongoing basis verifying enforcement of documented security requirements.

### 2.18.5.2 Supplemental Guidance

Because security categorizations apply to individual systems, the organization carefully considers the risks that may be introduced when systems are connected to other systems with different security requirements and security controls, both internal to the organization and external to the organization. Each interconnection between systems must be addressed individually, documenting the interface characteristics. The level of formality for this documentation varies depending on the relationship between the systems. The relationship ranges from systems with the same owner for which there is no need of an agreement but simply a description of the interface characteristics, to systems within different organizations necessitating a formal interconnection security agreement and a Memorandum of Understanding/Agreement. In every case, documenting the interface characteristics is required, yet the formality and approval process vary considerably even though all accomplish the same fundamental objective of managing the risk being incurred by the interconnection of the systems. Risk considerations also include systems sharing the same networks.

### 2.18.5.3 Requirement Enhancements

None

### 2.18.5.4 References

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-3
CAG	CC-5
API 1164r2	7.1, 7.3.1, 7.3.2, 7.3.3, 7.3.4, 8.2
NERC CIPS	CIP 005-3 B.R1, R2, R3

## 2.18.6 Plan of Action and Milestones

### 2.18.6.1 Requirement

The organization develops and updates a plan of action and milestones for the control system that documents the organization's planned, implemented, and evaluated remedial actions to correct weaknesses or deficiencies noted during the assessment of the security measures and to reduce or eliminate known vulnerabilities in the system. The organization reviews the action plan at least annually.

### 2.18.6.2 Supplemental Guidance

The plan of action and milestone updates are based on the findings from security control assessments, security impact analyses, and continual monitoring activities.

### **2.18.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.18.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 CA-5

API 1164r2 Annex B.3.1.1, Annex B.5.1.1.1

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3, C and D

## **2.18.7 Continuous Monitoring**

### **2.18.7.1 Requirement**

The organization monitors the security mechanisms in the control system on an ongoing basis. Those security mechanisms that are volatile or critical to protecting the control system are assessed at least annually. All other security mechanisms are assessed at least once during the control system's 3-year accreditation cycle.

### **2.18.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A continuous monitoring program allows an organization to maintain the security authorization of a system over time in a highly dynamic environment of operation with changing threats, vulnerabilities, technologies, and missions/business processes. Continuous monitoring of security controls using automated support tools facilitates near real-time risk management for systems. An effective continuous monitoring program includes: (1) configuration management and control of system components, (2) security impact analyses of changes to the system or its environment of operation, (3) ongoing assessment of security controls, and (4) status reporting.

This control is closely related to and mutually supportive of the activities required in monitoring configuration changes to the system. An effective continuous monitoring program results in ongoing updates to the system security plan, the security assessment report, and the plan of action and milestones—the three principle documents in the security authorization package. A rigorous and well-executed continuous monitoring program significantly reduces the level of effort required for the reauthorization of the system.

### **2.18.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

The organization employs an independent assessor or assessment team to monitor the security controls in the system on an ongoing basis.

### **2.18.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-4, PM-8, PM-9, PM-11, CA-7

CAG CC-17

API 1164r2 7.2, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.4, Annex B.4.1

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 B.R6

NRC RG 5.71 C.4, C.4.1, App. C.3.4, App. C.5.8

## **2.18.8 Security Categorization**

### **2.18.8.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Categorizes information and systems in accordance with applicable laws, management orders, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance

2. Documents the security categorization results (including supporting rationale) in the system security plan for the information system
3. Ensures the security categorization decision is reviewed and approved by the authorizing official or authorizing official designated representative.

#### **2.18.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

A clearly defined authorization boundary is a prerequisite for an effective security categorization. Security categorization describes the potential adverse impacts to organizational operations, organizational assets, and individuals should the information and information system be compromised through a loss of availability, integrity, or confidentiality. The organization conducts security categorization as an organization-wide activity with the involvement of the chief information officer, senior agency information security officer, control system owners, and information owners. As part of a defense-in-depth protection strategy, the organization may consider partitioning higher-impact control systems into separate physical domains (or environments) and restricting or prohibiting network access in accordance with an organizational assessment of risk.

This control includes, but is not limited to, the categorization of control system design information, network diagrams, process programs, and vulnerability assessments. Categorization is based on the need, priority, and level of protection required commensurate with sensitivity and impact of the loss of availability, integrity, or confidentiality. The organization periodically inventories and reviews the control system and information categorizations with established configuration management plans including where the information is processed, stored, and transmitted. The organization considers safety issues in categorizing the control system. The organization also considers potential impacts to other organizations (e.g., business partners, stakeholders), including interdependencies, and potential local, regional, and national impacts in categorizing the control system.

#### **2.18.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.18.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	RA-2
CAG	CC-9
API 1164r2	6, Annex B.2.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 A, B, C, D

### **2.18.9 Risk Assessment**

#### **2.18.9.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, disseminates, and reviews/updates:

1. A formal documented risk assessment policy that addresses purpose, scope, roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities and compliance
2. Formal documented procedures to facilitate the implementation of the risk assessment policy and associated risk assessment controls.

#### **2.18.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control is intended to produce the policy and procedures that are required for the effective implementation of selected security controls and control enhancements in the risk assessment family. The policy and procedures are consistent with applicable laws, executive orders, directives, policies regulations, standards, and guidance. Existing organizational policies and procedures may make the need for additional specific policies and procedures unnecessary. The risk assessment also considers potential

impacts to other organizations (e.g., business partners, stakeholders), and potential local, regional, and national level impacts of the control system including interdependencies and safety issues.

### **2.18.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.18.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	RA-3
CAG	CC-5, CC-10, CC-15, CC-16, CC-17
API 1164r2	7.2, Annex A, Annex B.3.1.4, Annex B.4.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 003-3 B.R4, R4.3, CIP 005-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3, App. C.13

## **2.18.10 Risk Assessment Update**

### **2.18.10.1 Requirement**

The organization updates the risk assessment plan annually or, whenever significant changes occur to the control system, the facilities where the system resides, or other conditions that may affect the security or accreditation status of the system.

### **2.18.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization develops and documents specific criteria for what are considered significant changes to the control system.

### **2.18.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.18.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	RA-3
CAG	CC-10, CC-17
API 1164r2	3.3, 3.6, Annex A
NERC CIPS	CIP 007-3 B.R8
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.3, App. C.13

## **2.18.11 Vulnerability Assessment and Awareness**

### **2.18.11.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Scans for vulnerabilities in the system on an organization-defined frequency and randomly in accordance with organization-defined process and when new vulnerabilities potentially affecting the system are identified and reported
2. Employs vulnerability scanning tools and techniques that promote interoperability among tools and automate parts of the vulnerability management process by using standards for (a) enumerating platforms, software flaws, and improper configurations; (b) formatting and making transparent checklists and test procedures; and (c) measuring vulnerability impact
3. Analyzes vulnerability scan reports and remediates legitimate vulnerabilities within a defined timeframe based on an assessment of risk

4. Shares information obtained from the vulnerability scanning process with designated personnel throughout the organization to help eliminate similar vulnerabilities in other systems.

#### **2.18.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Vulnerability analysis for custom software and applications may require additional, more specialized approaches (e.g., vulnerability scanning tools to scan for web-based vulnerabilities, source code reviews, and static analysis of source code). Vulnerability scanning includes scanning for ports, protocols, and services that should not be accessible to users and for improperly configured or incorrectly operating information flow mechanisms. Operational approval and care must be used when and if vulnerability scanning and penetration testing are used, to ensure ICS functions are not adversely impacted by the scanning process. Production ICS need to be taken off-line or replicated on test beds to the extent feasible. It is possible to scan ICS systems if they are off-line, but caution and approval of such scans are essential. Network scanning tools have been known to cause detrimental operational issues if not configured and tested before being used. It is not recommended to scan operational ICS systems unless absolutely required. If the risks for scanning on operational equipment are deemed too great, the organization should employ compensating controls.

#### **2.18.11.3 Requirement Enhancements**

1. The organization employs vulnerability scanning tools that include the capability to readily update the list of system vulnerabilities scanned.
2. The organization updates the list of system vulnerabilities scanned on an organization-defined frequency or when new vulnerabilities are identified and reported.
3. The organization employs vulnerability scanning procedures that can demonstrate the breadth and depth of coverage (i.e., system components scanned and vulnerabilities checked).
4. The organization attempts to discern what information about the system is discoverable by adversaries.
5. The organization performs security testing to determine the level of difficulty in circumventing the security controls of the system.
6. The organization includes privileged access authorization to organization-defined system components for selected vulnerability scanning activities to facilitate more thorough scanning.
7. The organization employs automated mechanisms to compare the results of vulnerability scans over time to determine trends in system vulnerabilities.
8. The organization employs automated mechanisms on an organization-defined frequency to detect the presence of unauthorized software on organizational systems and notify designated organizational officials.

#### **2.18.11.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 RA-5

CAG CC-4, CC-5, CC-7, CC-10, CC-17

API 1164r2 3.3, 3.6, Annex A

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 B.R8

NRC RG 5.71 C.4, C.4.1.3, App. C.13.1

## **2.18.12 Identify, Classify, Prioritize, and Analyze Potential Security Risks**

### **2.18.12.1 Requirement**

The organization identifies, classifies, prioritizes, and analyzes potential security threats, vulnerabilities, and consequences to their control systems assets using accepted methodologies.

### **2.18.12.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The organization begins by identifying the potential risks for its system. This is not a detailed analysis but a general identification of places and systems that might be at risk. These are then classified as to potential for harm and the organizations tolerance for risk. The risks are prioritized by which are of the most concern to the organization.

Each of the risks is then analyzed using an accepted methodology. A written plan documents the types of security incidents and the response to each type. This plan includes step-by-step actions to be taken by the various organizations. Risk reduction measures are implemented, and the results are monitored to ensure effectiveness of the risk management plan.

The reasons for selecting or rejecting certain security mitigation measures and the risks they address need to be documented. The security measures and countermeasures contained in the risk mitigation plan are designed to lower the risk to an acceptable level and minimize the adverse effect of a threat-exploiting vulnerability in the control system network.

### **2.18.12.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.18.12.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 RA-5

CAG CC-4, CC-5, CC-7, CC-10, CC-17

API 1164r2 Annex B.3.1

NERC CIPS CIP 007-3 B.R8

NRC RG 5.71 C.4, C.4.1.3, App. C.13.1

## **2.19 Security Program Management**

### **2.19.1 Information Security Program Plan**

#### **2.19.1.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Develops and disseminates an organization-wide security program plan that:
  - a. Provides an overview of the requirements for the security program and a description of the security program management controls and common controls in place or planned for meeting those requirements
  - b. Provides sufficient information about the program management controls and common controls (including specification of parameters for any assignment and selection operations either explicitly or by reference) to enable an implementation that is unambiguously compliant with the intent of the plan and a determination of the risk to be incurred if the plan is implemented as intended
  - c. Includes roles, responsibilities, management commitment, coordination among organizational entities, and compliance

- d. Is approved by a senior official with responsibility and accountability for the risk being incurred to organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, and reputation), organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation
- 2. Reviews the organization-wide security program plan on an organization-defined frequency, at least annually
- 3. Revises the plan to address organizational changes and problems identified during plan implementation or security control assessments.

#### **2.19.1.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The security program plan documents the organization-wide program management controls and organization-defined common controls. The security plans for individual systems and the organization-wide security program plan together, provide complete coverage for all security controls employed within the organization. Common controls are documented in an appendix to the organization's security program plan unless the controls are included in a separate security plan for a system (e.g., security controls employed as part of an intrusion detection system providing organization-wide boundary protection inherited by one or more organizational systems). The organization-wide security program plan will indicate which separate security plans contain descriptions of common controls.

Organizations have the flexibility to describe common controls in a separate document or in multiple documents in situations where different organizational entities are assigned responsibility. These different entities are accountable for the implementation, assessment, and approval of the common controls that are not implemented as part of a system. In those cases, the documents describing common controls are included as attachments to the security program plan. If multiple common control documents are contained in the security program plan, the organization specifies in each document, the organizational official or officials responsible for the implementation, assessment, and approval of the common controls included in the respective documents. For example, the organization may require that the Facilities Management Office develop, implement, assess, and approve common physical and environmental protection controls or that the Human Resources Office develop, implement, assess, and approve common personnel security controls when such controls are not associated with a system.

#### **2.19.1.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.19.1.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-1
API 1164r2	1.2, 3
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.5.3

### **2.19.2 Senior Information Security Officer**

#### **2.19.2.1 Requirement**

The organization appoints a senior security officer with the mission and resources to coordinate, develop, implement, and maintain an organization-wide security program.

#### **2.19.2.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The security officer described in this control is an official of the organization or an official of an appropriate subordinate organization. Organizations also may refer to this organizational official as the Senior Security Officer or Chief Security Officer.

### **2.19.2.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.19.2.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-2
API 1164r2	1.2, Annex B.5
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 B.R4
NRC RG 5.71	C.3.1.2

## **2.19.3 Information Security Resources**

### **2.19.3.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Ensures that all capital planning and investment requests include the resources needed to implement the security program and documents all exceptions to this requirement
2. Employs a business case to record the resources required
3. Ensures that security resources are available for expenditure as planned and approved.

### **2.19.3.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Organizations may designate and empower an Investment Review Board (or similar group) to manage and provide oversight for the security-related aspects of the capital planning and investment control process.

### **2.19.3.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.19.3.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-3
API 1164r2	3.6
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

## **2.19.4 Plan of Action and Milestones Process**

### **2.19.4.1 Requirement**

The organization (1) implements a process for ensuring that plans of action and milestones for the security program and the associated organizational systems are maintained and (2) documents the remedial security actions (from identification of needed action through assessment of implementation) to mitigate risk to organizational operations and assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation.

### **2.19.4.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The plan of action and milestones is a key document in the security program. The plan of action and milestones updates is based on the findings from security control assessments, security impact analyses, and continuous monitoring activities.

### **2.19.4.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.19.4.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-4
API 1164r2	Annex B.3.1.1, Annex B.5.1.1.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

#### **2.19.5 Information System Inventory**

##### **2.19.5.1 Requirement**

The organization develops and maintains an inventory of its systems and critical components.

##### **2.19.5.2 Supplemental Guidance**

This control addresses the inventory requirements in Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA). Federal organizations or organizations using information systems on behalf of a federal agency must comply with FISMA requirements. Additionally, a central tenet of the US Comprehensive National Cybersecurity Initiative states that “offense must inform defense.” Or, knowledge of actual attacks that have already compromised systems is the essential foundation on how to begin to construct effective defenses. But the basic tenant in cybersecurity is that you have to know what elements you have and how they work and how they are connected before you can begin the process of protecting them.

##### **2.19.5.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.19.5.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	CA-3, CM-3 CM-6, IA-3,PM-5
CAG	CC-1
API 1164r2	3.6, Annex B. 1.1, Annex B.2.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3
NRC RG 5.71	App. C.11.9

#### **2.19.6 Information Security Measures of Performance**

##### **2.19.6.1 Requirement**

The organization develops, monitors, and reports on the results of security measures of performance.

##### **2.19.6.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Measures of performance are outcome-based metrics used by an organization to measure the effectiveness or efficiency of the security program and the security controls employed in support of the program.

##### **2.19.6.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

#### **2.19.6.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-6
CAG	CC-1, CC-2, CC-3
API 1164r2	7.2.2, 8.2.4, Annex A, Annex B.1, Annex B.2.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

## **2.19.7 Enterprise Architecture**

### **2.19.7.1 Requirement**

The organization develops an enterprise architecture with consideration for security and the resulting risk to organizational operations, organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation.

### **2.19.7.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The integration of security requirements and associated security controls into the organization's enterprise architecture helps to ensure that security considerations are addressed by organizations early in the system development life cycle and are directly and explicitly related to the organization's mission/business processes. Security requirements and control integration are most effectively accomplished through the application of the Risk Management Framework and supporting standards and guidelines. The Federal Enterprise Architecture Segment Architecture Methodology provides guidance on integrating security requirements and security controls into enterprise architectures.

### **2.19.7.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.19.7.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-7
CAG	CC-16
API 1164r2	7, Annex B.1.1
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

## **2.19.8 Critical Infrastructure Plan**

### **2.19.8.1 Requirement**

The organization addresses security issues in the development, documentation, and updating of a critical infrastructure and key resources protection plan.

### **2.19.8.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The critical infrastructure and key resources protection plan is consistent with applicable laws, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance.

### **2.19.8.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.19.8.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3	PM-8
API 1164r2	4
NERC CIPS	CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

## **2.19.9 Risk Management Strategy**

### **2.19.9.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Develops a comprehensive strategy to manage risk to organizational operations and assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation associated with the operation and use of systems
2. Implements that strategy consistently across the organization.

### **2.19.9.2 Supplemental Guidance**

An organization-wide risk management strategy should include an unambiguous expression of the risk tolerance of the organization, guidance on acceptable risk assessment methodologies, and a process for consistently evaluating risk across the organization with respect to the organization's risk tolerance. The use of a risk executive function can facilitate consistent, organization-wide application of the risk management strategy.

### **2.19.9.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.19.9.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-9

API 1164r2 3.3

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

## **2.19.10 Security Authorization Process**

### **2.19.10.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Manages (i.e., documents, tracks, and reports) the security state of organizational systems through security authorization processes
2. Fully integrates the security authorization processes into an organization-wide risk management strategy.

### **2.19.10.2 Supplemental Guidance**

The security authorization process for systems requires the implementation of the Risk Management Framework and the employment of associated security standards and guidelines.

### **2.19.10.3 Requirement Enhancements**

None

### **2.19.10.4 References**

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-10

API 1164r2 7.3, Annex B. 2.1, Annex B.5.1

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

## **2.19.11 Mission/Business Process Definition**

### **2.19.11.1 Requirement**

The organization:

1. Defines mission/business processes with consideration for security and the resulting risk to organizational operations, organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the nation
2. Determines protection needs arising from the defined mission/business processes and revises the processes as necessary, until an achievable set of protection needs is obtained.

### **2.19.11.2 Supplemental Guidance**

Protection needs are technology-independent, required capabilities to counter threats to organizations, individuals, or the nation through the compromise of information (i.e., loss of confidentiality, integrity, or

availability). Inherent in defining an organization's protection needs is an understanding of the level of adverse impact that could result if a compromise occurs and, therefore, a categorization of information in accordance with FIPS 199. Modeling and simulation techniques can help in discerning the security ramifications in mission/business process definitions.

#### ***2.19.11.3 Requirement Enhancements***

None

#### ***2.19.11.4 References***

NIST SP 800-53r3 PM-11

API 1164r2 Annex A, Annex B.1.1

NERC CIPS CIP 002-3 through CIP 009-3

### **3. CONCLUSIONS**

This document presents a wide sampling of best practice, guidelines, and security controls for control systems used in many industries. Because this document is not limited to a specific industry sector, it should, therefore, be viewed as a master listing of reference information to be used when reviewing and developing standards for control systems. The recommended controls are designed specifically to provide standards bodies of industry sectors the basic security framework needed to develop sound security standards within each individual industry sector.

The recommendations presented in this document are designed to assist in creating the appropriate security program for control system networks with awareness to the threats and vulnerabilities of the enterprise. However, each industry has its own definitions and deployment intricacies, and therefore, all recommendation may not be appropriate. In particular, definitions and institutional operations drive the language and structure of many diverse standards and guidelines, yet the convergence and similarities of industrial cybersecurity is undeniable. Various guidelines and standards cannot be compared using control family titles only, as several standards and guidelines address similar security concerns in different areas, and typically within the context of related control families. Both the CAG and RG5.71 tend to do this, in that on first look, it appears security controls may not have been addressed. In fact, they have been extensively addressed, within several control families (examples would be “roles and responsibilities,” “document retention times” and “access control.” Each of these families are widely addressed within other controls, as roles and responsibilities, document retention times and access controls change with the subject matter (i.e., visitor control, configuration management, incident control).

These recommendations should be reviewed periodically to stay abreast of changing control system technologies, standards, guidelines, and cybersecurity threats to the industry. These recommendations address control system problems of a general nature. Implementing all these controls cannot guarantee absolute safety and security against cyber threats, as the dynamic nature of threats define defense as always lagging the offensive nature of malware. However, judicious adoption of the control system elements and defenses to harden existing ICSs must be made in the attempt to protect CIKR. The recommendations presented in this document can and should be customized by standards bodies representing each particular industry and business. Local, state, and federal laws and regulations should be reviewed as having precedence with respect to each particular industry and control system deployment.

## 4. GLOSSARY: DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

The terms and definitions referenced in this glossary are specific to their use in this document. No attempt has been made to correlate the definitions of the terms in this glossary with similar terms in other documents or standards.

Term	Definition
Access Control	The control of entry or use, to all or part, of any physical, functional, or logical component of a control system.
Accountability	An obligation or willingness to accept responsibility. A property or record that ensures that the actions of an entity may be traced uniquely to that entity.
Accreditation	The official management decision given by a senior organization official to authorize operation of a control system and explicitly to accept the risk to organization operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), organization assets, or individuals based on the implementation of an agreed-upon set of security measures.
Accreditation Boundary	All components of a control system to be accredited by an authorizing official and exclude separately accredited systems, to which the control system is connected. Synonymous with the term security perimeter defined in Committee on National Security Systems (CNSS) Instruction 4009 and DCID 6/3.
Activities	The performance of job functions or duties (e.g., conducting system backup operations, monitoring network traffic). An observed physical or logical event (e.g., the output from surveillance equipment or an entry in a log file).
Adequacy	Sufficient for a specific requirement or level of security.
Adequate Security	Security commensurate with the risk and the magnitude of harm resulting from the loss, misuse, or unauthorized access to or modification of information of a control system.
Agency	Of or belonging to the organization (e.g., senior agency information security officer).
Agreement	A contract or arrangement, either written or verbal, and sometimes enforced by law.
Approval	To give formal or official sanction.
Asset	An entity that may have value to the organization. Assets may be tangible or intangible. Assets may be people, a facility, materials, equipment, information, business reputation, an activity, or operation.
Attack	Attempt to gain unauthorized access to a system's services, resources, or information, or the attempt to compromise a control system's integrity, availability, or confidentiality.
Authentication	Verifying the identity of a user, process, or device, often as a prerequisite to allowing access to resources in a control system.
Authenticity	The property of being genuine and being able to be verified and trusted; confidence in the validity of a transmission, a message, or message originator. See authentication.

Term	Definition
Authorization	The right or a permission that is granted to a system entity to access a control system resource.
Authorizing Official	Official with the authority to formally assume responsibility for operating a control system at an acceptable level of risk to agency operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), agency assets, or individuals.
Availability	The property of a system or a system resource being accessible and usable on demand by an authorized system entity, according to performance specifications for the system.
Backup	A copy of information to facilitate recovery of operations or data restoration, if necessary. Redundant control system equipment that is available to allow continued control system operations in the event that the primary equipment fails.
Bandwidth	The rate at which a data path (e.g., a channel) carries data, measured in bits per second.
Bluetooth	A short-range wireless standard developed to create cableless connections between devices.
Boundary Protection	Methods to protect and/or isolate the ICS from IT Business systems and outside internet capable systems.
Business Network	An organization's data communications network used for general purpose business activities, typically connecting a wide variety of noncritical assets and users.
Can	The word "can," equivalent to "is able to," is used to indicate possibility and capability, whether material or physical.
Certificate	See "public key certificate."
Certification	A comprehensive assessment of the management, operational and technical security mechanisms in a control system, made in support of security accreditation, to determine the extent the security measures are implemented correctly, operating as intended and producing the desired outcome with respect to meeting the security requirements for the system.
Chief Information Officer	An organization official responsible for: providing advice and other assistance to the head of the organization and other senior management personnel of the organization to ensure that control system technology is acquired and control system resources are managed in a manner that is consistent with laws, executive orders, directives, policies, regulations, and priorities established by the head of the organization; developing, maintaining, and facilitating the implementation of a sound and integrated control system technology architecture for the organization; and promoting the effective and efficient design and operation of all major control system resources management processes for the organization, including improvements to work processes of the organization.
Client	A device or program requesting a service.
Compromise	The unauthorized disclosure, modification, substitution, or use of data or equipment.

Term	Definition
Confidential	Spoken, written, or electronic information that must be kept secret or in the confidence of a trusted employee; secret; private, entrusted with another's confidence or secret affairs, kept hidden or separate from the knowledge of others. Information that if released could cause harm to the operator and that is only supplied on a need-to-know basis.
Confidentiality	Assurance that information is not disclosed to unauthorized individuals, processes, or devices.
Contingency	A plan for how an organization will resume partially or completely interrupted critical function(s) within a predetermined time after a disaster or disruption.
Control System	A set of hardware and software acting in concert that manages the behavior of other devices.
Controlled Interface	Mechanism that facilitates the adjudication of different interconnected system security policies (e.g., controlling the flow of information into or out of an interconnected system).
Cost	Value impact to the organization or person that can be measured.
Countermeasure	Actions, devices, procedures, techniques, or other measures that reduce the vulnerability of a control system. Synonymous with security measures and safeguards.
Covert Channel Analysis	A method to covertly analyze and identify aspects of system communication that are potential avenues for covert storage, timing channels, and unauthorized information.
Cryptographic Boundary	A logical container where all the relevant security components of a control system that employ cryptography reside. It includes the processing hardware, data, and memory as well as other critical components.
Cryptographic Key (key)	A parameter used in conjunction with a cryptographic algorithm that defines the transformation of plaintext data into ciphertext data, the transformation of ciphertext data into plaintext data, a digital signature computed from data, the verification of a digital signature computed from data, an authentication code computed from data, or an exchange agreement of a shared secret.
Cryptographic Module	The set of hardware, software, and/or firmware that implements an approved security function(s) (including cryptographic algorithms and key generation) and is contained within the cryptographic boundary.
Cryptography	The study of mathematical techniques related to aspects of information security such as confidentiality, data integrity, entity authentication, and data origin authentication.
Cyber	Of, relating to, or involving computers or computer networks.
Cyber Attack	Exploitation of the software vulnerabilities of IT-based control components.

Term	Definition
Cybersecurity	<p>The protection of digital systems and their support systems from threats of:</p> <p>Cyberspace attack by adversaries who wish to disable or manipulate them.</p> <p>Physical attack by adversaries who wish to disable or manipulate them.</p> <p>Access by adversaries who want to obtain, corrupt, damage, or destroy sensitive information. This is an aspect of information security. Electronic data can be obtained by theft of computer storage media or by hacking into the computer system. A cyberspace attack may be mounted to obtain sensitive information to plan a future physical or cyberspace attack.</p>
Cybersecurity Incident	<p>Any malicious act or suspicious event that:</p> <p>Compromises, or was an attempt to compromise, the Electronic Security Perimeter or Physical Security Perimeter of a Critical Cyber Asset, or</p> <p>Disrupts, or was an attempt to disrupt, the operation of a Critical Cyber Asset.</p>
Data	<p>A common term used to indicate the basic elements that can be processed or produced by a computer.</p>
Demilitarized Zone	<p>Perimeter network segment that is logically between internal and external networks. Its purpose is to enforce the internal network's policy for external information exchange and to provide external, untrusted sources with restricted access to releasable information while shielding the internal networks from outside attacks.</p>
Denial-of-Service	<p>The prevention of authorized access to a system resource or the delaying of system operations and functions. (See "interruption.")</p>
Digital Signature	<p>The result of a cryptographic transformation of data that, when properly implemented, provides the services of origin authentication, data integrity, and signer nonrepudiation.</p>
Distributed Control Systems	<p>A distributed control system is a type of plant automation system similar to a SCADA system, except that a distributed control system is usually employed in factories and is located within a more confined area. It uses a high-speed communications medium, which is usually a separate wire (network) from the plant LAN. A significant amount of a closed loop control is present in the system.</p>
Domain Name	<p>An abstraction of IP addresses using more easily remembered names.</p>
Electronic Security Perimeter	<p>The logical border surrounding a network to which Critical Cyber Assets are connected and for which access is controlled.</p>
Element	<p>Any electrical device with terminals that may be connected to other electrical devices such as a generator, transformer, circuit breaker, bus section, or transmission line. An element may be composed of one or more components.</p>
Encryption	<p>Cryptographic transformation of data (called "plaintext") into a form (called "ciphertext") that conceals the data's original meaning to prevent it from being known or used. If the transformation is reversible, the corresponding reversal process is called "decryption," which is a transformation that restores encrypted data to its original state [RFC 2828].</p>
Entity	<p>The facility or critical asset owner, operator, etc.</p>
Environment	<p>The ambient natural and artificial conditions that surround a piece of operating equipment.</p>

Term	Definition
Facility	A plant, building, structure, or complex contiguously located on the same site, defined by a single geographical perimeter (usually determined by a fence or other barrier that surrounds and limits uncontrolled access), and used by the operator or its contractors for the performance of work under the jurisdiction of the operator. The term “facility” includes the land (soil), surface water, and groundwater contained within its geographical perimeter.
File Transfer Protocol	FTP is an Internet standard for transferring files over the Internet. FTP programs and utilities are used to upload and download web pages, graphics, and other files from your hard drive to a remote server which allows FTP access.
Firewall	A set of programs residing on a gateway server that protect the resources of an internal network. Basically, a firewall working closely with a router program examines each network packet to determine whether to forward it to its destination. A firewall is often installed in a specially designated computer that is separate from the rest of the network so no incoming request can get directly at private network resources. Several firewall screening methods are available; a simple one is to screen requests to make sure they come from an acceptable (previously identified) domain name and IP address on known ports. For mobile users, firewalls may allow remote access to the private network using secure logon procedures and authentication mechanisms.
Firmware	Programs or instructions that are permanently stored in hardware memory devices (usually read-only memories) that control hardware at a primitive level.
Gateway	A gateway is a network point that acts as an entrance to another network. [W-Gateway]
Hardware	Physical equipment directly involved in performing industrial process measuring and controlling functions.
Heterogeneity	Increasing the diversity of information technologies within the information system reduces the impact of exploitation from a specific technology.
Honeypots	Devices and/or techniques designed to actively seek out, monitor, and log malicious code and exploits in the internet in a secure configuration by posing as unprotected cyber clients.
Incident	An occurrence that actually or potentially jeopardizes the confidentiality, integrity, or availability of a control system or the information the system processes, stores, or transmits or that constitutes a violation or imminent threat of violation of security policies, security procedures, or acceptable use policies.
Individuals	An assessment object that includes people applying specifications, mechanisms, or activities.
Information Owner	Official with statutory or operational authority for specified information and responsibility for establishing the requirements for its generation, collection, processing, dissemination, and disposal.
Information Security	The protection of information and control systems from unauthorized access, use, disclosure, disruption, modification, or destruction in order to provide availability, integrity, and confidentiality.
Information Security Policy	Aggregate of directives, regulations, rules, practices, and procedures that prescribe how an organization manages, protects, and distributes information.

Term	Definition
Information Technology (IT)	Any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment that is used in the automatic acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information by the organization. The term information technology includes computers, ancillary equipment, software, firmware, and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources.
Integrity	Quality of a control system reflecting the logical correctness and reliability of the operation of the system; the logical completeness of the hardware and software implementing the protection mechanisms; and the consistency of the data structures and occurrence of the stored data. In a formal security mode, integrity is interpreted more narrowly to mean protection against unauthorized modification or destruction of information.
Interface	A logical entry or exit point of a cryptographic boundary that provides access to cryptographic modules for logical information flow.
Internal	Information that is accessible to all Employees and Contractors within the electronic perimeter, while providing services to the organization.
Interruption	A degradation or disruption of the communication from a device using message flooding, generation of invalid messages, or physical attacks on the communication system. Most commonly known as denial of service or distributed denial of service if multiple attackers are involved.
Intrusion	Unauthorized act of bypassing the security boundaries of a system.
Intrusion Detection (IDet)	IDet is a type of security management system for computers and networks. An IDet system gathers and analyzes information from various areas within a device or a network to identify possible security breaches, including intrusions (attacks from outside the organization) and misuse (attacks from within the organization).
IPSec	Short for “IP Security,” a set of protocols developed by the Internet Engineering Task Force to support the secure exchange of packets at the IP layer. IPSec has been deployed widely to implement Virtual Private Networks (VPNs). IPSec supports two encryption modes: Transport and Tunnel. Transport mode encrypts only the data portion (payload) of each packet, but leaves the header untouched. The more secure Tunnel mode encrypts both the header and the payload. On the receiving side, an IPSec-compliant device decrypts each packet.
ISA	International Society of Automation – Industrial Automation Controls System standards group, associated with ANSI and IEC.
Key	See cryptographic key.
Key Establishment	The process by which cryptographic keys are securely distributed among cryptographic modules using manual transport methods (e.g., key loaders), automated methods (e.g., key transport and/or key agreement protocols), or a combination of automated and manual methods (consists of key transport plus key agreement).
Key Management	The activities involving the handling of cryptographic keys and other related security parameters (e.g., IVs and passwords) during the entire life cycle of the keys, including their generation, storage, establishment, entry and output, and zeroization.

Term	Definition
Label	In data processing, a set of symbols used to identify or describe an item, record, message, or file. Occasionally, it may be the same as the address in storage.
Least Privilege	The concept of “Least Privilege” is to grant users only those permissions they need to operate and function. This reduces and eliminates the introduction of rogue or malware into cyber systems.
Malicious Code	Software or firmware intended to perform an unauthorized process that will have adverse impact on the availability, integrity, or confidentiality of an information system. A virus, worm, Trojan horse, or other code-based entity that infects a host, spyware, and some forms of adware (extortionware) are also examples of malicious code.
Malware	Malicious software developed to cause harm or undesirable effects to a computer or device.
Master	A device that initiates communications requests to gather data or perform control functions.
May	The word “may,” equivalent to “is permitted,” is used to indicate a course of action permissible.
Mechanisms	An assessment object that includes specific protection-related items (e.g., hardware, software, firmware, or physical devices) employed within or at the boundary of a control system.
Media	Physical devices or writing surfaces including but not limited to magnetic tapes, optical disks, magnetic disks, LSI memory chips, printouts (but not including display media) onto which information is recorded, stored, or printed within a control system.  The physical interconnection between devices attached to a network. Typical media are twisted pair, baseband coax, broadband coax, and fiber optics.
Media Sanitization	A general term referring to the actions taken to render data written on media unrecoverable by both ordinary and extraordinary means.
Message	An arbitrary amount of information whose beginning and end are defined or implied.
Mobile Code	Software programs or parts of programs obtained from remote control systems, transmitted across a network, and executed on a local control system without explicit installation or execution by the recipient. Typically used in configuration or alert pop-ups in gui interfaces.
Mobile Code Technologies	Software technologies that provide the mechanisms for the production and use of mobile code (e.g., Java, JavaScript, ActiveX, VBScript).
Mobile Devices	Portable cartridge/disk-based, removable storage media (floppy disks, CDs, tape, USB flash drives, external hard drives, and other flash memory cards (SD)/drives that contain nonvolatile memory) or portable computing and communications device with information storage capability (notebook computers, personal digital assistants, cellular telephones, cameras). Used for component control system configuration.
Modification	The alteration of data or information; in the adverse situation, the alteration results in a condition other than intended by the originator.

Term	Definition
Monitor	<p>To measure a quantity continuously or at regular intervals so that corrections to a process or condition may be made without delay if the quantity varies outside prescribed limits.</p> <p>Software or hardware that observes, supervises, or verifies the operations of a system.</p>
Monitoring	<p>The act of observing, carrying out surveillance on, and/or recording the presence of individuals for the purpose of maintaining and improving procedural standards and security. The act of detecting the presence of unauthorized personnel, sounds, or visual signals, and the measurement thereof with appropriate measuring instruments.</p>
Must	<p>The use of the word “must” is deprecated and shall not be used when stating mandatory requirements. The word “must” is used to describe unavoidable situations only.</p>
Network Disconnect	<p>The cyber system terminates a network connection at the end of a session or after a period of inactivity.</p>
Nonrepudiation	<p>Protection against an individual falsely denying having performed a particular action. Provides the capability to determine whether a given individual took a particular action such as creating information, sending a message, approving information and receiving a message.</p>
Operator	<p>The person who initiates and monitors the operation of a computer or process.</p>
Organization	<p>An administrative and functional structure that pursues collective goals, that manages its own performance, and that has a boundary separating it from its environment (as a business, association, or society); also the personnel of such a structure.</p>
Packet	<p>A collection of data created for transmittal across a network. The data include the data needing transmission along with control data needed to direct the data properly to its destination.</p>
Parity	<p>A simple error detection technique that uses an extra parity bit for blocks of data.</p>
Password	<p>A string of characters (letters, numbers, and other symbols) used to authenticate an identity or to verify access authorization.</p>
Patch	<p>An update for software created to fix bugs and errors but has become synonymous with fixing security vulnerabilities.</p>
Penetration Testing	<p>A test methodology in which assessors, using all available documentation (system design, source code, manuals) and working under specific constraints, attempt to circumvent the security features of an information system.</p>
Periodically	<p>An amount of time not to exceed 1 year.</p>
Physical Security	<p>Measures intended to improve protection by means such as fencing, locks, vehicle barriers, area lighting, surveillance systems, guards, dogs, intrusion detection systems, alarms, access controls, vehicle control, and housekeeping.</p>
Physical Security Perimeter	<p>A type of gate, door, wall, or fence system that is intended to restrict and control the physical access or egress of personnel.</p> <p>The physical border surrounding computer rooms, telecommunications rooms, operations centers, and other locations in which critical cyber assets are housed and for which access is controlled.</p>

Term	Definition
Plan of Action and Milestones	A document that identifies tasks needing to be accomplished. It details resources required to accomplish the elements of the plan, any milestones in meeting the tasks, and scheduled completion dates for the milestones.
Port	A logical entry or exit point on a computer for connecting communications or peripheral devices.
Potential Impact	The loss of confidentiality, integrity, or availability could be expected to have: (1) a limited adverse effect (FIPS 199 low), (2) a serious adverse effect (FIPS 199 moderate), or (3) a severe or catastrophic adverse effect (FIPS 199 high) on organizational operations, organizational assets, or individuals.
Predictable Failure Prevention	Mean time between failure rates are defendable and based on considerations that are installation specific, not the industry average. This provides the asset owner with a list of substitute information system components when needed and a mechanism to exchange active and standby roles of the components.
Private Key	A cryptographic key, used with a public key cryptographic algorithm, that is uniquely associated with an entity and is not made public.
Process Control	Descriptive of systems in which computers or intelligent electronic devices are used for automatic regulation of operations or processes. Typical are operations wherein the control is applied continuously and adjustments to regulate the operation are directed by the computer or device to keep the value of a controlled variable constant. Contrasted with numerical control.
Protective Distribution System	Wire line or fiber optic system that includes adequate safeguards and/or countermeasures (e.g., acoustic, electric, electromagnetic, and physical) to permit its use for the transmission of unencrypted information.
Protocol	A set of rules used by end point devices in a telecommunication connection to facilitate data exchange.
Proxy Server	A server placed between users and the Internet to act as a filter for malicious or unwanted traffic. Proxy servers are stateful, and most focus on a single application (HTTP, FTP, etc.) and, therefore, can detect more malicious activity than a firewall or router.
Public	Information that can be shared with the general public.
Public Key	A cryptographic key used with a public key cryptographic algorithm that is uniquely associated with an entity and that may be made public. (Public keys are not considered Collaborative Signal Processing.)
Public Key Certificate	A set of data that uniquely identifies an entity contains the entity's public key, and is digitally signed by a trusted party, thereby binding the public key to the entity.
Public Key Infrastructure	A framework that is established to issue, maintain, and revoke public key certificates.
Recommended	The word "recommended" is used to indicate flexibility of choice with a strong preference for the referenced control.
Record	A group of related facts or fields of information treated as a unit, thus a listing of information, usually in printed or printable form. To put data into a storage device.

Term	Definition
Records	The recordings of evidence of activities performed or results achieved (e.g., forms, reports, test results), which serve as a basis for verifying that the organization and the control system are performing as intended. Also used to refer to units of related data fields (i.e., groups of data fields that can be accessed by a program and that contain the complete set of information on particular items).
Red Team Exercise	An exercise, reflecting real-world conditions, that is conducted as a simulated adversarial attempt to compromise organizational missions and/or business processes to provide a comprehensive assessment of the security capability of the information system and organization.
Register	High speed storage within a Central Processing Unit (CPU) where data or the data's address in RAM resides when being processed. Consider adding definition for a Programmable Logic Controller register
Remote Access	Access by users (or control systems) communicating external to a control system security perimeter.
Remote Maintenance	Maintenance activities conducted by individuals communicating external to a control system security perimeter.
Replay	Recording message traffic and “playing it back” to a device later in order to make it do what you want.
Residual Risk	The remaining risks after the security controls have been applied.
Restricted	Information with limited or confined distribution, which is not accessible to the general public or other company employees.
Risk	A measure combining the severity and likelihood of harm from an event. Alternatively, the likelihood of an adverse outcome: $\text{Risk} = L \times P \times C,$ L is the likelihood of attack and depends on the motivation, capabilities, and intent of adversaries. P is the probability of success and depends on vulnerabilities present. C is the consequence(s). Risk is also the potential for damage to or loss of an asset.
Risk Assessment	The process of identifying risks to agency operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), agency assets, or individuals by determining the probability of occurrence, the resulting impact, and additional security controls that would mitigate this impact. Part of risk management, synonymous with risk analysis, and incorporates threat and vulnerability analyses.
Risk Management	The process of managing risks to agency operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), agency assets, or individuals resulting from the operation of a control system. It includes risk assessment; cost-benefit analysis; the selection, implementation, and assessment of security controls; and the formal authorization to operate the system. The process considers effectiveness, efficiency, and constraints because of laws, directives, policies, or regulations.
Role	A set of transactions that a user or set of users can perform within the context of an organization.

Term	Definition
Role-based Access Control	Access control based on user roles (a collection of access authorizations a user receives based on an explicit or implicit assumption of a given role). Role permissions may be inherited through a role hierarchy and typically reflect the permissions needed to perform defined functions within an organization. A given role may apply to a single individual or to several individuals.
Router	A network layer device that sends traffic on the quickest route to reach its destination.
Safeguards	Protective measures prescribed to meet the security requirements (i.e., confidentiality, integrity, and availability) specified for a control system. Safeguards may include security features, management constraints, personnel security, and security of physical structures, areas, and devices. Synonymous with security controls and countermeasures.
Sanitization	Process to remove information from media such that information recovery is not possible. It includes removing all labels, markings, and activity logs.
SCADA System	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition systems are a combination of computer hardware and software used to send commands and acquire data for the purpose of monitoring and controlling.
Secret Key	A cryptographic parameter held private by one or more entities to limit the ability to communicate or access that group or entity.
Security	Protection against threats and attacks.
Security Category	The characterization of information or a control system based on an assessment of the potential impact that a loss of confidentiality, integrity, or availability of such information or control system would have on organizational operations, organizational assets, or individuals.
Security Control Assessment	The testing and/or evaluation of the management, operational, and technical security controls in an information system to determine the extent to which the controls are implemented correctly, operating as intended, and producing the desired outcome with respect to meeting the security requirements for the system.
Security Label	Explicit or implicit marking of a data structure or output media associated with a control system representing the FIPS 199 security category, or distribution limitations or handling caveats of the information contained therein.
Security Performance	Security performance may be evaluated in terms of a program's compliance, completeness of measures to provide specific threat protection, postcompromise analysis, review of changing business requirements, new threat and vulnerability information, and periodic audit of control systems to ensure that security measures remain effective and appropriate. Tests, audits, tools, measures, or other methods are required to evaluate security practice performance.
Security Perimeter	See Accreditation Boundary.
Security Plan	A document that describes an operator's plan to address security issues and related events, such as security assessments and mitigation options, and includes security levels and response measures to security threats.

Term	Definition
Security Policies	Security policies define the objectives and constraints for the security program. Policies are created at several levels, ranging from company or corporate policy to specific operational constraints (e.g., remote access). In general, policies provide answers to the questions “what” and “why” without dealing with “how.” Policies are normally stated in terms that are technology-independent.
Security Practices	Security practices provide a means of capturing experiences and activities that help ensure system protection and reduce potential manufacturing and control systems compromise. Subject areas include physical security, procedures, organization, design, and programming. Security practices include the actual steps to be taken to ensure system protection.
Security Procedures	Security procedures define exactly how security practices and policies are implemented and executed. They are implemented through personnel training and actions using currently available and installed technology (such as disconnecting modems). Procedures and contained criteria also include more technology-dependent system requirements that need careful analysis, design, planning, and coordinated installation and implementation.
Security Program	A security program brings together all aspects of managing security, ranging from the definition and communication of guidelines through implementation of best industry practices and ongoing operation and auditing.
Security Requirements	The management, operational, and technical controls (i.e., safeguards or countermeasures) prescribed for a control system that are derived from laws, executive orders, directives, policies, instructions, regulations, or organizational (mission) needs to ensure the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of the information being processed, stored, or transmitted.
Senior Agency Information Security Officer	Official responsible for carrying out the Chief Information Officer responsibilities under FISMA and serving as the Chief Information Officer’s primary liaison to the agency’s authorizing officials, control system owners, and system security officers.
Server	A device or computer system that is dedicated to providing specific facilities to other devices attached to the network.
Server Farm	A cluster of networked servers generally housed in the same location used to perform computationally intense functions by distributing the workload.
Session	Layer 5 of OSI. (ISA definition of OSI: Abbreviation for open system interconnection [a connection between one communication system and another using a standard protocol]. OSI reference model, Layer 5—Session: provides user-to-user connections.)
Shall	Equivalent to “is required to” and used to indicate mandatory requirements strictly to be followed to conform to the standard and from which no deviation is permitted.
Should	Equivalent to “is recommended that” and used to indicate several possibilities recommended as particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding other, that a certain course of action is preferred but not required, that (in the negative form) a certain course of action is deprecated but not prohibited.
Six-wall border	This refers to a physical, completely enclosed border such as a room, cage, safe or metal cabinet. Raised floors and drop ceilings may not constitute part of a border because they could create potentially uncontrolled access points.

Term	Definition
Software	A set of programs, procedures, rules, and possibly associated documentation concerned with the operation of a computer system compilers, library routines, manuals, circuit diagrams.
Spam	Unsolicited and often unwanted e-mail.
Specifications	An assessment object that includes document-related artifacts (e.g., policies, procedures, plans, system security requirements, functional specifications, and architectural designs) associated with a control system.
Spyware	Software that is secretly or surreptitiously installed into a control system to gather information on individuals or organizations without their knowledge.
Standard	A reference established by authority, custom, or general consent as a model or example. For the purposes of the U.S. Chemicals Sector Cyber Security Strategy, a standard is considered a voluntary practice or guideline that is established by consensus of the industry.
Supervisory Control	A term used to imply that a controller output or computer program output is used as an input to other controllers, e.g., generation of setpoints in cascaded control systems. Used to distinguish from direct digital control.
Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA)	A computer control system used in real time to monitor and control one or more remote facilities. The system collects data and/or sends control instructions, either automatically or by operators at other locations. SCADA is used to control facilities in industries such as telecommunications, water and waste control, energy, oil and gas refining, and transportation.
Supply Chain Protection	A supply chain is a system of organizations, people activities, information, and resources that provides products and/or services to consumers. Malicious activity at any point in the supply chain poses downstream risks to the mission/business processes that are supported by those informational systems.
Switch	A network device that interconnects devices and creates separate paths for communication.
System	<p>An assembly of procedures, processes, methods, routines, or techniques united by some form of regulated interaction to form an organized whole.</p> <p>An assemblage of equipment, machines, or control devices, interconnected mechanically, hydraulically, pneumatically or electrically, and intended to act together to perform a predetermined function.</p> <p>A combination of generation, transmission, and distribution components.</p>
System Security Plan	Formal document that provides an overview of the security requirements for the control system and describes the security mechanisms in place or planned for meeting those requirements.
System Software	The special software within the cryptographic boundary (e.g., operating system, compilers, or utility programs) designed for a specific computer system or family of computer systems to facilitate the operation and maintenance of the computer system, and associated programs, and data.
Technical Measures	The security mechanisms (i.e., safeguards or countermeasures) for a control system that are primarily implemented and executed by the control system through mechanisms contained in the hardware, software, or firmware components of the system.

Term	Definition
Thin Nodes	Information system that employs processing components that have minimal functionality and data storage.
Third Party	Refers to vendors, support personnel, other companies.
Threat	Any circumstance or event with the potential to adversely impact organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), assets, or individuals through a control system via unauthorized access, destruction, disclosure, modification of information, and/or denial of service. Also, the potential for a threat source to successfully exploit control system vulnerabilities.
Threat Source	The intent and method targeted at the intentional exploitation of vulnerabilities or a situation and method that may accidentally trigger a specific vulnerability. Synonymous with term threat agent.
Trustworthiness	Defined in degrees of correctness for intended functionality and the degree of resilience to attack by explicitly identified levels of adversary capability. This is defined on different levels on a basis of component-by-component, subsystem-by-subsystem, function-by-function or a combination.
Unauthorized Disclosure	An event involving the exposure of information to entities not authorized access to the information.
User	Individual or (system) process authorized to access a control system.
Utility	<p>A generic term that, when qualified, identifies the business entity including all its operating and business functions; e.g., electric utility, gas utility, water utility, wastewater utility, pipeline utility.</p> <p>Any general-purpose computer program included in an operating system to perform common functions.</p> <p>Any of the systems in a process plant, manufacturing facility not directly involved in production; may include any or all the following – steam, water, refrigeration, heating, compressed air, electric power, instrumentation, waste treatment, and effluent systems.</p>
Virtual Private Network	A network that is constructed by using public wires to connect nodes. For example, a number of systems enable you to create networks using the Internet as the medium for transporting data. These systems use encryption and other security mechanisms to ensure that only authorized users can access the network and that the data cannot be intercepted.
Vulnerability	A flaw or weakness in a system's design, implementation, or operation and management that could be exploited to violate the system's security policy.
Vulnerability Analysis	The identification of the ways in which assailants may attack a facility to cause harm. It can include qualitative risk analysis.
Vulnerability Assessment	Formal description and evaluation of the vulnerabilities in a control system.

## 5. DOCUMENTS REFERENCED

The following documents and tools were reviewed or referenced in the preparation of this catalog. Some of these documents are still in draft stage or do not apply directly to control systems. Other references are not standards, but very informative guidelines or implementation guidance documents containing timely and useful information for improving the security of ICSs. An attempt has been made to organize these references with respect to the DHS critical Infrastructure sectors. Some of the references listed below may be proprietary, designed for licensed in-house usage, and may be obtained via purchase or specific individual request. All the documents listed below are listed for user awareness. The contents of proprietary/licensed documents are not used in this document unless expressed written permission of the originator/publisher was received. Several documents such as the multiple NIST Publications, DHS publications, NERC documents, and various open source documents are freely available; and some of the content was included in the creation of this document.

### **General:**

American National Standards Institute/Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society Technical Report (ANSI/ISA-TR99.00.01-2007), Security Technologies for Manufacturing and Control Systems, 2007.

[http://www.isa.org/Template.cfm?Section=Shop\\_ISA&Template=/Ecommerce/ProductDisplay.cfm&Productid=9665](http://www.isa.org/Template.cfm?Section=Shop_ISA&Template=/Ecommerce/ProductDisplay.cfm&Productid=9665)

American National Standards Institute/Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society Technical Report (ANSI/ISA-TR99.00.02-2004), Integrating Electronic Security into the Manufacturing and Control Systems Environment, April 12, 2004.

[http://www.isa.org/Template.cfm?Section=Find\\_Standards&Template=/Customsource/ISA/Standards/TaggedStandardsCommittee.cfm&id=4296](http://www.isa.org/Template.cfm?Section=Find_Standards&Template=/Customsource/ISA/Standards/TaggedStandardsCommittee.cfm&id=4296)

Department of Homeland Security, National Cyber Security Division, Control System Security Program, Cyber Security Evaluation Tool, Release 3.0. [http://www.us-cert.gov/control\\_systems/pdf/CSET\\_fact\\_sheet.pdf](http://www.us-cert.gov/control_systems/pdf/CSET_fact_sheet.pdf)

Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 140-2, “Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules,” issued May 25, 2001, updated December 03, 2002. FIPS-140-3 is a DRAFT Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules and is still in draft form. FIPS 140-2 also contains the following four annexes:

A – January 4, 2011, Draft “Approved Security Functions for FIPS Pub 140-2”

B – June 14, 2007, Draft “Approved Protection Profiles for FIPS PUB 140-2”

C – November 24, 2010, Draft “Approved Random Number Generators for FIPS PUB 140-2”

D – January 4, 2011, Draft “Approved Key Establishment Techniques for FIPS PUB 140-2.”

<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips140-2/fips1402.pdf>

Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 180-3, “Secure Hash Standards,” issued October 2008. [http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips180-3/fips180-3\\_final.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips180-3/fips180-3_final.pdf)

Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 198-1, “The Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code (HMAS),” issued July 2008. [http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips198-1/FIPS-198-1\\_final.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips198-1/FIPS-198-1_final.pdf)

International Electrotechnical Commission 62351-1, “Data and Communication Security,” Committee Draft Version 1, April 2005.

International Electrotechnical Commission 62443-2-1, “Industrial Communication Networks – Network and System Security”:

Part 1-1: “Terminology, concepts and models,” July 2009

Part 2-1: “Establishing an industrial automation and control system security program,” November 2010

Part 3-1: “Security technologies for industrial automation and control systems,” July 2009

Part 3-3: “

[http://webstore.iec.ch/webstore/webstore.nsf/Artnum\\_PK/43215](http://webstore.iec.ch/webstore/webstore.nsf/Artnum_PK/43215)

<http://www.iec.ch/cgi-bin/procgi.pl/www/iecwww.p?wwwlang=E&wwwprog=prodet.p&He=IEC&Pu=62443&Pa=2&Se=1&Am=&Fr=&TR=&Ed=1>

International Organization for Standardization 17799, “Code of Practice for Information Security Management,” June 10, 2005. (Note: This document has been superseded by ISO/IEC 27002:2005, Stage 90.92, April 2008.)

International Organization for Standardization 27001, “Information Security Management Systems Requirements,” October 14, 2005.

International Society of Automation Society Standards Committee, ANSI/ISA-99.00.01-2007, “Manufacturing and Control Systems Security Part 1: Concepts, Models and Terminology,” October 29, 2007.

International Society of Automation Standards Committee, ANSI/ISA-99.02.01-2009, “Manufacturing and Control Systems Security Part 2: Establishing a Manufacturing and Control System Security Program,” January 13, 2009.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-48, “Wireless Network Security 802.1, Bluetooth and Handheld Devices,” Revision 1, September 2008.

<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-48-rev1/SP800-48r1.pdf>

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-53, “Recommended Security Controls for Federal Information Systems,” Revision 3 Final, August 2009.

[http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-53-Rev3/sp800-53-rev3-final\\_updated-errata\\_05-01-2010.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-53-Rev3/sp800-53-rev3-final_updated-errata_05-01-2010.pdf)

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-82, “Guide to Industrial Control Systems (ICS) Security,” Final Public Draft, September 2008.

[http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/drafts/800-82/draft\\_sp800-82-fpd.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/drafts/800-82/draft_sp800-82-fpd.pdf)

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-127, “Guide to Securing WiMAX Wireless Communications,” September 2010.

<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-127/sp800-127.pdf>

“Twenty Critical Controls for Effective Cyber Defense: Consensus Audit,” Version 2.3, November 13, 2009. <http://www.sans.org/critical-security-controls/print.php>

<http://www.sans.org/whatworks/20-critical-controls-poster-122010.pdf>

WIB, “Process Control Domain-Security Requirements for Vendors: Plant Security,” second issue, M2784-X-10, Version 2.0, Evaluation International (EI), WIB and EXERA, October 2010.

<http://www.wib.nl/>

**Chemical:**

Chemical Information Technology Council (ChemITC), Guidance for Cyber Security in Chemistry, Version 4.0, November 2009.

Department of Homeland Security – Office of Infrastructure Protection – Infrastructure Security Compliance Division – “Risk-Based Performance Standards Guidance (RBPS)– Chemical Facility Anti-Terrorism Standards,” Version 2.4 May 2009.

[http://www.dhs.gov/xlibrary/assets/chemsec\\_cfats\\_riskbased\\_performance\\_standards.pdf](http://www.dhs.gov/xlibrary/assets/chemsec_cfats_riskbased_performance_standards.pdf)

**Electric Power:**

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers 1402, “Guide for Electric Power Substation Physical and Electronic Security,” January 30, 2000.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Interagency Report (NISTIR) 7628, “Guidelines for Smart Grid Cyber Security: Volume 1, Smart Grid Cyber Security Strategy, Architecture, and High-Level Requirements,” August 2010.

[http://www.dhs.gov/xlibrary/assets/chemsec\\_cfats\\_riskbased\\_performance\\_standards.pdf](http://www.dhs.gov/xlibrary/assets/chemsec_cfats_riskbased_performance_standards.pdf)

National Institute of Standards and Technology Interagency Report (NISTIR) 7628, “Guidelines for Smart Grid Cyber Security: Volume 2, Privacy and the Smart Grid,” August 2010.

[http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistir/ir7628/nistir-7628\\_vol2.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistir/ir7628/nistir-7628_vol2.pdf)

National Institute of Standards and Technology Interagency Report (NISTIR) 7628, “Guidelines for Smart Grid Cyber Security: Volume 3, Smart Grid Cyber Security: Supportive Analyses and References,” August 2010. [http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistir/ir7628/nistir-7628\\_vol3.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistir/ir7628/nistir-7628_vol3.pdf)

North American Electric Reliability Council, Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP-002-3 through CIP 009-3), Approved by Board of Trustees: December 16, 2009.

<http://www.nerc.com/page.php?cid=2%7C20>

North American Electric Reliability Council, Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP-002-4 through CIP 009-4), approved draft (Phase II), which involves the more complex FERC directives. These drafts have not yet been submitted to the NERC Board of Trustees for approval at the time of writing.

North American Electric Reliability Council, Security Guidelines for the Electricity Sector, Version 1.0, June 14, 2002.

**Gas:**

American Gas Association, “Cryptographic Protection of SCADA Communications Part 1: Background, Policies and Test Plan (AGA 12, Part 1),” March 14, 2006.

American Gas Association, “Cryptographic Protection of SCADA Communications Part 2: Retrofit link encryption for asynchronous serial communications (AGA 12, Part 2),” March 31, 2006.

**Nuclear:**

Department of Energy DOE O 205.1A “Department of Energy Cyber Security Management,” December 4, 2006. [http://cio.energy.gov/policy-guidance/doe\\_policies.htm](http://cio.energy.gov/policy-guidance/doe_policies.htm)

Department of Energy DOE M 205.1-4, “National Security System Manual,” March 8, 2007. [http://cio.energy.gov/policy-guidance/doe\\_policies.html](http://cio.energy.gov/policy-guidance/doe_policies.html)

Department of Energy DOE M 205.1-5, “Cyber Security Process Requirements Manual.”

Department of Energy DOE M 205.1-6, “Media Sanitization Manual,” December 23, 2008.

Department of Energy DOE M 205.1-7, “Security Controls for Unclassified Information Systems Manual,” January 5, 2009.

Department of Energy DOE M 205.1-8, “Cyber Security Incident Management Manual,” January 8, 2009.

Nuclear Energy Institute “Cyber Security Plan for Nuclear Power Reactors,” NEI 08-09, Revision 6, April 2010.

U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission – Regulatory Guide 5.71 “Cyber Security Programs for Nuclear Facilities,” January 2010. <http://nrc-stp.ornl.gov/slo/regguide571.pdf>

**Oil and Petroleum:**

American Petroleum Institute, “API 1164: Pipeline SCADA Security, Second Edition,” June 2009.

American Petroleum Institute, “Security Guidelines for the Petroleum Industry,” April 2005.

**Transportation:**

American Public Transit Association “Securing Control and Communications Systems in Transit Environments – Part 1: Elements, Organization and Risk Assessment/Management,” APTA RP-CCS-1-RT-001-10, July 2010.

Department of Transportation – Federal Transit Administration - 49 CFR, Part 659, Rail Fixed Guideway Systems; State Safety Oversight, April 2005 – This document authorizes 26 individual states authorization to implement and manage 43 separate rail transit agencies. <http://transit-safety.fta.dot.gov/Publications/order/singledoc.asp?docid=603>

## Appendix A

### Cross Reference of Standards

This cross reference mapping loosely correlates the requirements and guidance contained in the referenced source documents against the recommendations in the Catalog of Control Systems Security. This correlation depicts a general relationship between multiple documents in multiple industrial sectors. The cross reference cannot imply an exact matching between specific requirement details and multiple controls currently existing, but strives to implicitly address and associate specific controls across several standards and guidance documents.

The source documents in the cross reference are constantly evolving to address new and expanded understanding of security topics. Previous source documents have been deleted from this document as they are no longer relevant, or have been superseded by newer documents. This crosswalk attempts to use the most recent update of the source documents available at the time of publication, but availability, publishing and timing may result in older versions of source documents being referenced and used. Furthermore, it is not possible to determine the priority and baseline risk for each control family in every industrial facility and control system deployment.

Two reference sources were removed from the cross reference at this time. They are: (1) ChemITC—“Guidance for Addressing Cybersecurity in the Chemical Sector, Version 3.0; Chemical Sector Cyber Security Program May 2006”; This document has been superseded by “Guidance for Addressing Cyber Security in the Chemical Industry, Version 4, November 2009,” and has not yet been reviewed; and (2) “NERC Security Guidelines—Security Guidelines for the Electricity Sector, Version 1.0 May 3, 2005,” has been superseded by the NERC Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP) reliability standards.

Two new additional reference sources were added at this time. They are (1) “Twenty Critical Controls for Effective Cyber Defense: Consensus Audit Guidelines (CAG),” Version 2.3 November 13, 2009, and (2) U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission—Regulatory Guide 5.71—“Cyber Security Programs for Nuclear Facilities,” January 2010. These two sources were added, as they are the latest cybersecurity standards released and provide a very good basis in industrial cybersecurity. The CAG, for instance, is broken down into four categories within each of the 20 critical controls. The first category is label “QW,” which denotes a “quick win,” action that will immediately improve the security posture, especially if addressed by the user. The second category is “Improved Visibility and Attribution,” meant to increase monitoring, visibility and attribution, so organizations can better monitor network and computer systems. The third category is “Hardened Configuration and Improved Information Security Hygiene,” and focuses on protecting against poor security practices by system administrators and end users. The final category is “Advanced” and identifies actions and items that further improve security beyond the other three categories. The CAG also lists functional/effectiveness testing to see how and if security functions are working. The NRC RG 5.71 takes elements from NIST SP 800-53 r3 and NIST SP 800-82 and focuses on how to use these elements in the operation of nuclear reactors. Most ICSs share similar layout, function and security. Three appendixes are in NRC 5.71. Appendix A is a generic Cyber Security Plan template for utilities to use. Appendix B contains Technical Security Controls, while Appendix C consists of Operational and Management Security Controls. The unique method on which roles, configuration, what to test, how to test, and periodic retesting provides an element lacking in current cybersecurity standards and guidelines.

The cross reference is accurate at the time of the most recent update. The reader is encouraged to confirm the currency, accuracy, and applicability of the source documents and obtain current copies of all

pertinent source documents as necessary. The versions of the documents used in the cross reference are listed below:

AGA 12-1	Cryptographic Protection of SCADA Communications Part 1: Background, Policies and Test Plan, Draft 5, April 14, 2005.
AGA 12-2	Cryptographic Protection of SCADA Communications Part 2: Retrofit Link Encryption for Asynchronous Serial Communications, March 31, 2006.
FIPS 140-2	Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules, issued May 25, 2001, updated December 3, 2002.
API 1164	Pipeline SCADA Security, Second Edition, June 2009.
API Security Guidelines	Security Guidelines for the Petroleum Industry, April 2005.
CAG	Twenty Critical Controls for Effective Cyber Defense: Consensus Audit Guidelines, Version 2.3 November 13, 2009.
ChemITC	Guidance for Cyber Security in Chemistry, Version 4, November 2009.
ISO 17799	Information Technology—Security Techniques—Code of Practice for Information Security Management, Second Edition, 2005-06-15, superseded by ISO 27002.
ISO 27001	Information Technology—Security Techniques—Information Security Management Systems—Requirements, First Edition, October 15, 2005.
IEC 62351	Data and Communications Security—Introduction, Committee Draft Version 1, April 2005.
IEEE 1402	IEEE Guide for Electric Power Substation Physical and Electronic Security, January 30, 2000.
ISA 99-1	Manufacturing and Control Systems Security, Part 1: Models and Terminology, Draft 1, Edit, February 8, 2005.
ISA99-2	Manufacturing and Control System Security, Part 2: Establishing a Manufacturing and Control System Security Program, Draft 1, Edit 1, April 15, 2005.
NERC CIP	Cyber Security, 002-3 to 009-3: Approved by Board of Trustees: December 16, 2009.
NIST SP 800-53R3	NIST Special Publication 800-53, Revision 3, “ <a href="#">Recommended Security Controls for Federal Information Systems and Organizations</a> ,” August 2009.
RG 5.71	U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission – Regulatory Guide 5.71 – “Cyber Security Programs for Nuclear Facilities”, January 2010.

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.1.1	Security Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.2.1	Management Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.2.2	Management Accountability	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X
2.2.3	Baseline Practices	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.2.4	Coordination of Threat Mitigation	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	X
2.2.5	Security Policies for Third Parties	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.2.6	Termination of Third-Party Access	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.3.1	Personnel Security Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.2	Position Categorization	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.3	Personnel Screening	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.4	Personnel Termination	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.5	Personnel Transfer	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.6	Access Agreements	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.3.7	Third-Party Personnel Security	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.8	Personnel Accountability	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.3.9	Personnel Roles	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.4.1	Physical and Environmental Security Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.4.2	Physical Access Authorizations	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.4.3	Physical Access Control	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.4.4	Monitoring Physical Access	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.4.5	Visitor Control	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	X
2.4.6	Visitor Records	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3	
2.4.7	Physical Access Log Retention	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	
2.4.8	Emergency Shutoff	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.4.9	Emergency Power	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	
2.4.10	Emergency Lighting	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	
2.4.11	Fire Protection	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	
2.4.12	Temperature and Humidity Controls	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	
2.4.13	Water Damage Protection	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	
2.4.14	Delivery and Removal	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	
2.4.15	Alternate Work Site	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.4.16	Portable Media	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.4.17	Personnel and Asset Tracking	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	
2.4.18	Location of Control System Assets	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	
2.4.19	Information Leakage	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.4.20	Power Equipment and Power Cabling	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	X
2.4.21	Physical Device Access Control	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	X
2.5.1	System and Services Acquisition Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.5.2	Allocation of Resources	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.5.3	Life-Cycle Support	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.5.4	Acquisitions	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.5.5	Control System Documentation	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	
2.5.6	Software License Usage Restrictions	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.5.7	User-Installed Software	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-Rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.5.8	Security Engineering Principles	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.5.9	Outsourced Control System Services	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.5.10	Developer Configuration Management	X	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.5.11	Developer Security Testing	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.5.12	Supply Chain Protection	X	—	X	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.5.13	Trustworthiness	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.5.14	Critical Information System Components	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	—	X
2.6.1	Configuration Management Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.6.2	Baseline Configuration	X	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.6.3	Configuration Change Control	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.6.4	Monitoring Configuration Changes	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.6.5	Access Restrictions for Configuration Change	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.6.6	Configuration Settings	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.6.7	Configuration for Least Functionality	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.6.8	Configuration Assets	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.6.9	Addition, Removal, and Disposal of Equipment	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.6.10	Factory Default Authentication Management	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.6.11	Configuration Management Plan	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.1	Strategic Planning Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.2	Control System Security Plan	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.3	Interruption Identification and Classification	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.4	Roles and Responsibilities	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.5	Planning Process Training	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.7.6	Testing	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.7	Investigation and Analysis	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.7.8	Corrective Action	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.9	Risk Mitigation	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.10	System Security Plan Update	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.11	Rules of Behavior	—	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.7.12	Security-Related Activity Planning	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.8.1	System and Communication Protection Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.8.2	Management Port Partitioning	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.8.3	Security Function Isolation	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.8.4	Information in Shared Resources	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.8.5	Denial-of-Service Protection	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.8.6	Resource Priority	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.8.7	Boundary Protection	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.8.8	Communication Integrity	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-Rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.8.9	Communication Confidentiality	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.8.10	Trusted Path	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.11	Cryptographic Key Establishment and Management	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.12	Use of Validated Cryptography	X	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.13	Collaborative Computing Devices	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.14	Transmission of Security	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.15	Public Key Infrastructure Certificates	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.16	Mobile Code	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.17	Voice-Over Internet Protocol	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X
2.8.18	System Connections	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.8.19	Security Roles	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.8.20	Session Authenticity	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	—	X
2.8.21	Architecture and Provisioning for Name/Address Resolution Service	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.22	Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Authoritative Source)	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.23	Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Recursive or Caching Resolver)	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.24	Fail in Known State	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.25	Thin Nodes	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.8.26	Honeypots	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-Rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3	
2.8.27	Operating System-Independent Applications	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.8.28	Confidentiality of Information at Rest	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.8.29	Heterogeneity	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	
2.8.30	Virtualization Techniques	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	
2.8.31	Covert Channel Analysis	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	
2.8.32	Information System Partitioning	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.8.33	Transmission Preparation Integrity	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.8.34	Non-Modifiable Executable Programs	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X
2.9.1	Information and Document Management Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.9.2	Information and Document Retention	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.9.3	Information Handling	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.9.4	Information Classification	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.9.5	Information Exchange	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.9.6	Information and Document Classification	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.9.7	Information and Document Retrieval	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.9.8	Information and Document Destruction	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—
2.9.9	Information and Document Management Review	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	—

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.9.10	Media Marking	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.9.11	Security Attributes	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.10.1	System Maintenance Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.10.2	Legacy System Upgrades	X	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.10.3	System Monitoring and Evaluation	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.10.4	Backup and Recovery	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.10.5	Unplanned System Maintenance	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	—	—
2.10.6	Periodic System Maintenance	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.10.7	Maintenance Tools	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.10.8	Maintenance Personnel	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.10.9	Non-Local (Remote) Maintenance	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	X
2.10.10	Timely Maintenance	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.11.1	Security Awareness and Training Policy and Procedures	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.11.2	Security Awareness	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.11.3	Security Training	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.11.4	Security Training Records	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.11.5	Contact with Security Groups and Associations	X	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.11.6	Security Responsibility Testing	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	—	—
2.12.1	Incident Response Policy and Procedures	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.12.2	Continuity of Operations Plan	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.3	Continuity of Operations Roles and Responsibilities	—	—	X	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.4	Incident Response Training	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.5	Continuity of Operations Plan Testing	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.6	Continuity of Operations Plan Update	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.7	Incident Handling	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.8	Incident Monitoring	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.12.9	Incident Reporting	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.10	Incident Response Assistance	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.12.11	Incident Response	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.12	Corrective Action	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.13	Alternate Storage Sites	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.14	Alternate Command/Control Methods	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	X
2.12.15	Alternate Control Center	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.16	Control System Backup	—	—	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.17	Control System Recovery and Reconstitution	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.12.18	Fail-Safe Response	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2.13.1	Media Protection Policy and Procedures	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.13.2	Media Access	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.13.3	Media Classification	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.13.4	Media	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.13.5	Media Storage	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.13.6	Media Transport	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.13.7	Media Sanitization and Disposal	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.1	System and Information Integrity Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.2	Flaw Remediation	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.3	Malicious Code Protection	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.4	System Monitoring Tools and Techniques	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.5	Security Alerts and Advisories and Directives	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.6	Security Functionality Verification	—	X	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.14.7	Software and Information Integrity	—	X	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.14.8	Spam Protection	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.9	Information Input Restrictions	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.10	Information Input	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.14.11	Error Handling	—	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.14.12	Information Output Handling and Retention	—	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.14.13	Predictable Failure Prevention	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.15.1	Access Control Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.15.2	Identification and Authentication Policy and Procedures	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.15.3	Account Management	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.15.4	Identifier Management	X	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.15.5	Authenticator Management	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X

		AGA12-1	—	AGA12-2	—	FIPS 140-2	—	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	—	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	—	20 Critical Controls	—	ISO 17799	—	ISO 27001	—	IEC 62351	—	IEEE 1402	—	ISA99-1	—	NRC Reg Guide 5.7.1	—	NERC CIP-Rev -3	—	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.15.6	Account Review	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.7	Access Enforcement	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.8	Separation of Duties	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.9	Least Privilege	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.10	User Identification and Authentication	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.11	Permitted Actions without Identification or Authentication	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—		
2.15.12	Device Identification and Authentication	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	X		
2.15.13	Authenticator Feedback	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.14	Cryptographic Module Authentication	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—		
2.15.15	Information Flow Enforcement	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.16	Passwords	X	—	X	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.17	System Use Notification	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.18	Concurrent Session Control	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—		
2.15.19	Previous Logon (Access) Notification	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—		
2.15.20	Unsuccessful Login Attempts	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	X		
2.15.21	Session Lock	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—		
2.15.22	Remote Session Termination	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	—		
2.15.23	Remote Access Policy and Procedures	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.24	Remote Access	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		
2.15.25	Access Control for Mobile Devices	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	X		
2.15.26	Wireless Access Restrictions	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X		

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.15.27	Personally Owned Information	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.15.28	External Access Protections	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.15.29	Use of External Information Control Systems	X	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.15.30	User-Based Collaboration and Information Sharing	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	X
2.15.31	Publicly Accessible Content	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.16.1	Audit and Accountability Policy and Procedures	X	—	X	X	X	—	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.16.2	Auditable Events	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.3	Content of Audit Records	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.4	Audit Storage Capacity	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	—
2.16.5	Response to Audit Processing Failures	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.6	Audit Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.7	Audit Reduction and Report Generation	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.8	Time Stamps	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.9	Protection of Audit Information	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.10	Audit Record Retention	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	X
2.16.11	Conduct and Frequency of Audits	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.16.12	Auditor Qualification	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.16.13	Audit Tools	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	X	X	—	X
2.16.14	Security Policy Compliance	—	—	—	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.16.15	Audit Generation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X	X	X

		AGA12-1	AGA12-2	FIPS 140-2	API 1164, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition	API Security Guidelines 3 <sup>rd</sup> Edition	20 Critical Controls	ISO 17799	ISO 27001	IEC 62351	IEEE 1402	ISA99-1	ISA99-2	NRC Reg Guide 5.71	NERC CIP-rev -3	NIST SP800-53 Rev. 3
2.16.16	Monitoring for Information Disclosure	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X
2.16.17	Session Audit	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X
2.17.1	Monitoring and Reviewing Control System Security Management Policy and Procedures	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.17.2	Continuous Improvement	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X
2.17.3	Monitoring of Security Policy	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.17.4	Best Practices	—	—	—	X	X	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.17.5	Security Accreditation	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	X
2.17.6	Security Certification	X	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X
2.18.1	Risk Assessment Policy and Procedures	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X
2.18.2	Risk Management Plan	X	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	—	X	X	X	X
2.18.3	Certification, Accreditation, and Security Assessment Policies and Procedures	X	—	—	X	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	X
2.18.4	Security Assessments	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.18.5	Control System Connections	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	X
2.18.6	Plan of Action and Milestones	—	—	—	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	X	X
2.18.7	Continuous Monitoring	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X
2.18.8	Security Categorization	—	—	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	X	—	X	X
2.18.9	Risk Assessment	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	X	X	X	X	X	X
2.18.10	Risk Assessment Update	—	—	—	X	X	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	X	X	X

